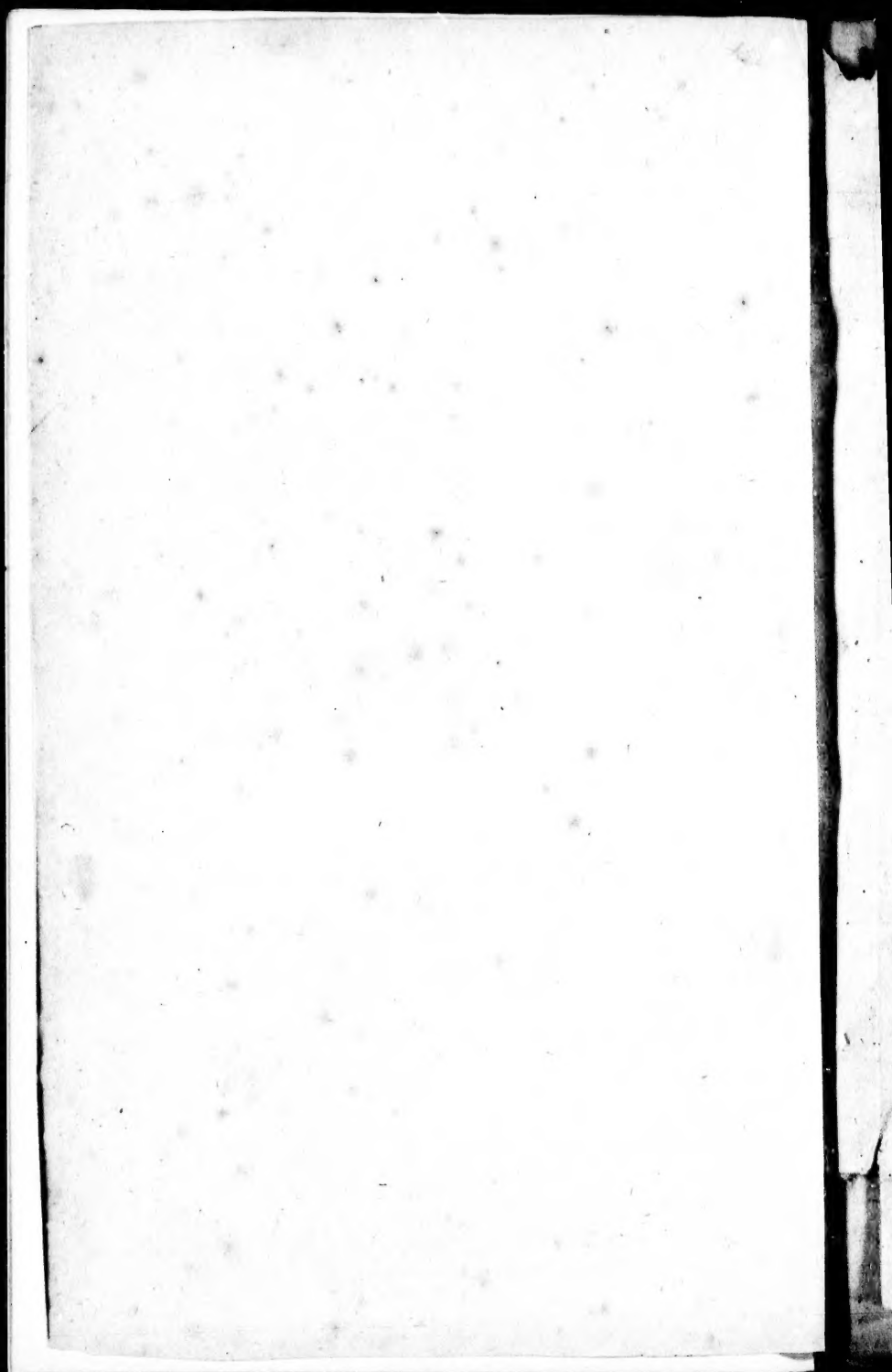




SALLE GAGNON





Explanation of the Letters

- A The mouth of a small River lying in 28: 27 N. Lat. & 277 of Longitude where the Author first landed.
- B The mouth of a Branch of y^e great River w^{ch} falls into y^e Bay of St. Lewis, and forms a little Island, on the Point whereof, next the Entrance into the Bay, y^e Dwelling was made.
- C A River unknown.
- D The River of Beccos only Bank whereof a Dwelling was made above w^{ch} y^e said Riv^r separates into two Branches.
- E The River of Canoe so called from its Mouth as far as the Place where it divides into two Branches, whereof y^e right is call'd Monone Riv^r on Account of the Amours of y^e said Barbet a Lieutenant & this parts into 3 other Branches y^e one left where the Riv^r becomes forked is call'd the Princess's River for the same Reason as above.
- F The Riv^r de la Saltemiere or of y^e Sand Banks.
- G The River Heine the Mouth whereof is unknown.
- H The River Lalon the Mouth of it unknown.
- I The Great River call'd the Monone or y^e Illinoise.
- K The River Eque y^e Mouth of it unknown.
- L The River of Canoe the Mouth of it unknown.
- M An Inconceivable River y^e Mouth of it unknown.
- N A beautiful Riv^r being y^e only Nation or Cong^y Mouth of it unknown.
- O Another Riv^r w^{ch} runs by y^e Village of the same y^e Mouth of it unknown.
- P The Dwelling whereof we departed w^{ch} y^e Riv^r is call'd y^e Road being pointed down Riv^r above mentioned & mark'd wth Letters our Road being pointed down in this manner: to come to y^e Riv^r of y^e Canoe as y^e Place where it becomes forked, where we found a House mark'd R. inhabited by two Freemen. & unbarkeing there we ran down to y^e River, Missippi, and afterwards proceeded up it to y^e River of the Illinoise. Note y^e Year this y^e Riv^r Missippi has changed its Name & is call'd St. Lewis's River.
- Q A Pullock of y^e Country whose Hair is long & as fine as Silk. There is an infinite Number of them.
- S The famous Fall of Niagara where y^e River of St. Lawrence cast it self down from a Height of above 200 Fathoms.

PART OF SOUTH AMERICA

SALLE GAGNON

1848

1719

1129

Cyrus Woodman, Dec^r 1846.

**Mr. FOUTEL's
JOURNAL
OF HIS
VOYAGE
TO
MEXICO:**

His TRAVELS Eight hundred
Leagues through Forty Nations
of **INDIANS** in *Louisiana*
to *Canada* :

His ACCOUNT of the great
River **MISSISSIPPI.**

To which is Added,
A MAP of that Country ; with a De-
scription of the great *Water-Falls* in the
River **MISOURIS.**

Translated from the French publish'd at PARIS.

L O N D O N :

Printed for **BERNARD LINTOT** be-
tween the *Temple-Gates.* 1719,

Mr. FOUTEL'S
JOURNAL
OF HIS
VOYAGE
TO
MEXICO:

His TRAVELS Eight hundred
Leagues through Forty Nations
of INDIANS in Louisiana
to Canada:

His ACCOUNT of the great
River MISSISSIPPI

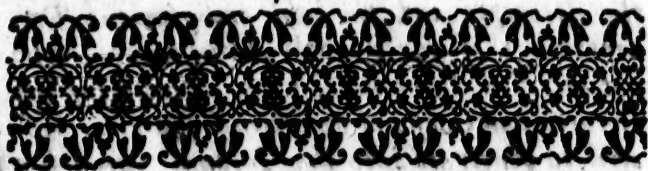
To which is Added,
A MAP of that Country; with a De-
scription of the great Water-Falls in the
River MISSOURI.

Translated from the French published at PARIS.

A 5748 N.

Printed for BERNARD LINTOT be-
tween the Temple-Gate. 1719.

which 7/3/62. \$325.00



THE
French BOOKSELLER
TO THE
READER.

THE Manuscript of this Journal hapning
to fall into my Hands, and having
shewn it to some Persons well vers'd in these
Affairs, they were of Opinion it deserv'd to be
printed; especially at this Time, when Travels
are so much in Request, and in Regard this is
now seasonable, on Account of the Description
it gives of the famous River Mississipi and of
the Country of Louisiana, where it is intended
to make great Settlements. Besides, this Re-
lation is uncommon, curious and ingaging,
both in Regard to the Honour and Advan-

tage of the Nation, for as much as it contains the Attempts and the bold and glorious Undertakings of our French Adventurers, who not satisfied, like others, with discovering the Borders and Coasts of unknown Countries, proceed to penetrate into the Inland, through a thousand Dangers and Hazards of their Lives. Is it not very commendable in them, to make us fully acquainted with that great remaining Part of the World, which for so many Ages continued unknown to our Forefathers, till about two hundred Tears ago Christopher Columbus discover'd it, and Americus Vesputius going over soon after, gave it his Name, causing it to be call'd America? One of those whom I desired to peruse this Manuscript, has a little polish'd it, pursuant to the Orders I receiv'd; and he having been a considerable Traveller, was a proper Person to judge of and put it into a Dress fit to appear in publick. The Letter he writ to me, being not only instructive, in Relation to the Journal, but of Use as a curious Supplement to it, I thought the inserting of it would be acceptable. It is as follows.

SIR,

it contains
various Un-
rers, who
covering the
stries, pro-
through a
their Lives.
n, to make
remaining
many Ages
athers, till
topher Co-
cus Vespu-
his Name,
One of those
uscript, has
the Orders I
considerable
judge of and
publick. The
instructive,
t of Use as
ght the in-
It is as

SIR,

[iii]

S I R,

I Return you your Manuscript ; the Reading of it has reviv'd the Satisfaction I once took in my Travels ; it has oblig'd me to read over again those of several Persons, who have writ of *Canada*, and carry'd me in Imagination through those vast, barbarous and unknown Countries, with much more Ease and less Danger than was done by the Hero of this Relation. He certainly deserves that honourable Title, and having read his Adventures, I could not forbear saying with the Poet

*Illi robur & as triplex
Circa Pectus erat.*

For what an extraordinary Strength, what a Vigour of Body and Mind was requisite for him to project, to undertake and to go thro' with so unusual, so bold and so difficult an Enterprize: A Discovery of above eight hundred Leagues of barbarous and unknown Countries, without any beaten Roads, without Towns, and without any of those Conveniencies, which render Travelling more easy in all

B 3

other

other Parts. All the Land-Carriage is reduc'd to walking afoot ; being often without any other Shoes but a Piece of a Bullock's Hide wrapp'd about the Feet ; carrying a Firelock, a Snapfack, Tools and some Commodities to barter with the Natives. It is true that accidentally and but very rarely a Horse is found to help out a little.

If they must venture upon the Water, there are only some wretched Canoes, made either of the Barks of Trees or of Bullocks Hides, and those they must often carry or drag along the Land, when the Falls of the Rivers obstruct making use of them. All the Bed is lying on the bare Ground, expos'd to the Inclemencies of the Air, to be devour'd by Alligators and bit by Rattle Snakes ; without Bread, Wine, Salt and all other Comforts of Life, and this for some Years. The Diet altogether consists in a poor Pap or Hasty-Pudding made of the Meal of *Indian* Corn, Fin half broil'd or ill boil'd, and some Beef or wild Goats Flesh, dry'd in the Air and Smoke. Besides, what a Trouble is it to invent Signs to be understood by so many several Nations, each of which has it's peculiar Language ? All this an Adventurer must resolve with himself to go through, who designs to make Discoveries in *Canada* ; and it would be hard to believe
this

riage is re-
often with-
ce of a Bul-
Feet ; car-
Tools and
with the Na-
ally and but
help out a

the Water,
ed Canoes,
es or of Bul-
must often
, when the
aking use of
on the bare
lemencies of
ligators and
hout Bread,
forts of Life,
he Diet alto-
Hafty-Pud-
ndian Corn,
, and some
d in the Air
Trouble is
rstood by so
f which has
this an Ad-
himself to go
Discoveries
rd to believe
this

this, did not all those who write of it ex-
actly agree in this Particular.

However that Country is good and
pleasant, at least towards the South, which
is what is here spoken of. The Tempera-
ture of the Climate is admirable, the Soil
excellent for Tillage, and it is extraordi-
nary fertil in all Sorts of Grain and Fruit ;
which appears by those the Land produces
of it self in great Plenty. The Hills and
Woods produce Timber for all Uses and
Fruit Trees, as well of cold as hot Coun-
tries. There are Vines which want but
little Improvement ; there are Sugar-
Canes, large Meadows, and navigable Ri-
vers full of Fish. It is true they are in-
fested with Alligators, but with a little
Care they are to be avoided ; as may the
Rattle-Snakes, which are extraordinary
venomous, but never bite unless they are
hurt. There are thousands of wild Bul-
locks, larger than ours, their Flesh good ;
and instead of Hair, they have a Sort of
curl'd Wool extraordinary fine. There are
Abundance of Deer, wild Goats and all
Sorts of wild Fowl, and more especially
of Turkeys. As there are Poisons and Ve-
noms, so there are immediate and won-
derful Antidotes.

We must not look there for rich and
stately Cities, or lofty Structures, or any of
those Wonders of Architecture, or the Re-
mains

mains and ancient Monuments of the Vanity of great Men ; but we may there admire Nature in its beautiful Simplicity, as it came from the Hands of its Creator ; without having been alter'd or depraved by Ambition or Art.

But is so vast and so beautiful a Country only for Beasts, Birds and Fishes ! O inconceivable Wonder ! There is an infinite Number of People, divided into Nations, living in Cottages made of the Barks of Trees, or cover'd with Reeds or Hides, when they are not abroad at War, or Hunting, or Fishing, almost naked, without any other Bed but a Bullock's Hide, or any Household-Stuff but a Pot or Kettle, an Axe and some Platters made of Bark. They take their Sustenance, as it comes in their Way, and like the Beasts ; they have no Care, do not value Wealth, sing, dance, smoke, eat, sleep, hunt, fish ; are independent, make War, and when an Opportunity offers, take Revenge of any Injury in the most cruel Manner they are able. Such is the Life of those Savages. Tho' there be some in the Southern Parts, not quite so stupid and brutal as those in the North, yet they are both Savages, who think of Nothing but what is present, love Nothing but what is obvious to the Senses, incapable of comprehending any Thing that is Spiritual ; sharp and ingenious in
what

s of the Va-
ay there ad-
mplicity, as
ts Creator ;
r depraved

ul a Coun-
d Fishes ! O
re is an in-
led into Na-
of the Barks
ds or Hides,
ar, or Hunt-
ed, without
s Hide, or
t or Kettle,
ade of Bark.
s it comes in
; they have
sing, dance,
re indepen-
n Opportu-
ny Injury in
eable. Such

Tho' there
ts, not quite
n the North,
ho think of
t, love No-
the Senses,
any Thing
ingenious in
what

what is for the own Advantage, without
any Sense of Honour or Humanity ; horri-
bly cruel, perfectly united among them-
selves to their Nation and their Allies ; but
revengeful and merciless towards their E-
nemies. To conclude, their Shape, tho'
hideous, shews they are Men ; but their
Genius and Manners render them like the
worst of Beasts.

A modern Author, who has liv'd in
Canada, and in other Respects has writ
well enough, has perhas fancy'd, he might
distinguish himself, and be thought more
understanding than other Men in discove-
ring the Genius of those People, by assign-
ing more Ingenuity and Penetration to
the Savages, than is generally allow'd
them. He sometimes makes them to argue
too strongly and too subtilly against the
Mysteries of Christian Religion, and his
Relation has given just Occasion to suspect,
that he is himself the Libertine and Talk-
ing Savage, to whom he has given the
artful Malignity of his Notions and Ar-
guments.

As for the Genius of the Savages, I am
of Opinion, we ought to believe the Mis-
sioners ; for they are not less capable than
other Men to discover the Truth, and they
have at least as much Probity to make it
known. It is likely, that they, who have
for an hundred Years past, wholly apply'd
them-

*La Hon-
tan's for-
ged Dis-
course
with a Sa-
vage,
wherein he
renders
himself
ridiculous*

*The Na-
tives of
Canada
brutal.*

themselves, according to the Duty of their Function, to study those poor Images of Men, should not be acquainted with them? Or would not their Conscience have check'd them, had they told a Lye in that Particular? Now all the Missioners agree, that allowing there are some Barbarians less wicked and brutal than the rest; yet there are none good, nor thoroughly capable of such Things as are above the Reach of our Senses; and that whatsoever they are, there is no relying on them; there is always cause to suspect them, and in short, before a Savage can be made a Christian, it is requisite to make him a Man; and we look upon those Savages as Men, who have neither King nor Law, and what is most deplorable, no God; for if we rightly examine their Sentiments and their Actions, it does not appear that they have any Sort of Religion, or well form'd Notion of a Deity. If some of them, upon certain Occasions, do sometimes own a First or Sovereign Being, or do pay some Veneration to the Sun. As to the first Article, they deliver themselves in such a confuse Manner, and with so many Contradictions and Extravagancies, that it plainly appears, they neither know nor believe anything of it; and as for the second, it is only a bare Custom, without any serious Reflection on their Part.

Duty of their
 Images of
 painted with
 Conscience
 told a Lye
 the Mission-
 re are some
 brutal than
 good, nor
 things as are
 ; and that
 no relying
 e to suspect
 vage can be
 ite to make
 on those Sa-
 er King nor
 deplorable,
 amine their
 it does not
 of Religi-
 Deity. If
 casions, do
 eign Being,
 e Sun. As
 themselves
 d with so
 vagancies,
 ther know
 as for the
 n, without
 art.

A

A miserable Nation, more void of the Light of Heaven, and even that of Nature, than so many other Nations in the *East Indies*, who, tho' brutal and stupid as to the Knowledge of the Deity, yet are not without some Sort of Worship, and have their Hermits and *Fakirs* who endeavour by the Practice of horrid Penances, to gain the Favour of that Godhead, and thereby shew they have some real Notion of it. Nothing of that Sort is to be found among our *American Savages*, and in Conclusion, it may be said of them in General, that they are a People without a God.

Our *French*, who are born in *Canada*, all of them well shap'd, and Men of Sense and Worth, cannot endure to have their Savages thus run down. They affirm they are like other Men, and only want Education and being improv'd; but besides that we may believe they say so to save the Honour of their Country, we advance nothing here but what is grounded on the Report of many able and worthy Persons, who have writ of it, after being well inform'd on the Spot. We are therefore apt to believe, that there is a Distinction to be made at present between two Sorts of Savages in *Canada*, viz. those who have been conversant among the *Europeans* for sixty or eighty Years past, and the others who are daily discover'd; and it is of the latter that

that we speak here more particularly, and to whom we assign all those odious and wretched Qualities of the Savages of *North America*; for it is well known, that the first Sort of them, as for Instance, the *Hurons*, the *Algonquins*, the *Iroquois*, the *Istinois* and perhaps some others are now pretty well civiliz'd, so that their Reason begins to clear up, and they may become capable of Instruction.

Strong Wo-
men.

Amazing and incomprehensible, but at the same Time adorable Disposition of Divine Providence! We see here a vast Tract of the Earth, of an immense Extent, of a wonderful Soil for Tillage and Fertility in all Sorts of Fruit and Grain; of an admirable Temperature as to the Air, which appears by the very numerous Inhabitants being scarce subject to any Diseases, and in that the Sex, which among us is weak, is there Strong and Vigorous, bringing forth their Children with little or no Pain, and suckling them amidst Labour and Fatigues, without any of those Miseries they are liable to in our Countries. Yet that vast and beautiful Country, describ'd in this Journal, so much favour'd with Worldly Blessings, has been for so many Ages destitute of the Heavenly.

The infinite Numbers of People inhabiting it are Men, and have scarce any thing but the Shape; they are God's Creatures, and

nd. do not so much as know, much less
 ively, and serve him. Those who have the Courage
 e odious and and Boldness to travell through the Coun-
 ges of *North* tries of such Savages, and those who read
 wn, that the the Relations of such Travellers, ought
 nce, the *Hu-* to take Care how they make any rash Re-
 uois, the *Isti-* sctions upon this Point, or pry too deep-
 re now pret- into it; for they may chance to lose
 r Reason be- themselves in their Thoughts. The short-
 become ca- est and the safest Course is, in such Cases,
 to adore the inconceivable Profoundness of
 the Creator's Wisdom; to give a Check
 sible, but at to all our Enquiries and Curiosities, with
 osition of Di- the Apostle's Exclamation, *O the Depth of*
 a vast Tract the *Riches both of the Wisdom and Knowledge*
 Extent, of a of *God! How unsearchable are his Judgments*
 d Fertility in and *his Ways past finding out!* And never
 of an admi- cessing to return Thanks to his Goodness,
 e Air, which having so abundantly supply'd us with
 s Inhabitants Light and Grace, to conjure him to
 eases, and in part the same to those poor distress'd *A-*
 weak, is there *mericans*, and that he who is Almighty, will of
 g forth their those Stones make Children of *Abraham*. This
 n, and suck- d Christians are oblig'd incessantly to
 d Fatigues, pay for, because as Brutish and Stupid as
 they are li- those Savages are, they are still our Brethren,
 et that vast since like us descended from *Adam* and
 ib'd in this *Noah*.

ith Worldly How much are we then oblig'd to those
 ny Ages de- bold Travellers, who undertake new Dis-
 coveries, who to the Hazard of their Lives,
 ce any thing at their own Expence, and with such ex-
 s Creatures, traordinary
 and

traordinary Toils, go to find out for us, not only numerous Objects of our Curiosity and Admiration, which were before unknown to us, but who also discover to us a numerous Kindred, which is not ever the less such, for having been so long unknown to us. What if it be brutal and indocible; it will be the more Meritorious to Labour at Civilizing of and making it capable of receiving the Lights of Reason and of Faith. We can never sufficiently express our Gratitude to those who apply themselves to the making of new Discoveries; the more Difficulties that attend them, the more we are beholden to those who undertake them. Supposing that Avarice, Ambition, a restless Temper, or a desperate Fortune, are very often the Occasions of such Undertakings; yet God who can draw Good out of Evil, makes all those Passions subservient to his Glory, and the Salvation of his Elect, and if long Travels do not commonly make Saints of the Travellers, it is their own Fault. However, they at least prepare the Way to the Sanctification of so many Barbarians, beating a Road for the Missioners who go to instruct those People. Thus the World is beholden to them; the Savages for the Knowledge of God that procur'd them; and we for finding by their Means an infinite Number of People before

ut for us, not
ur Cugiosity
e before un-
discover to us
is not ever
n so long un-
be brutal and
Meritorious
nd making it
hts of Reason
ufficiently ex-
e who apply
f new Disco-
es that attend
olding to those
pposing that
s Temper, or
ery often the
ngs; yet God
Evil, makes al
his Glory, and
t, and if long
make Saints
own Fault
pare the Way
many Barbar
he Missioner
ple. Thus a
them; the Sa
of God that
or finding b
nber of Peop
before

before unknown, who will join with us in
Serving and Glorifying the Creator of the
Universe.

Granting that the said Travellers are
not sometimes exact, or agree among
themselves in their Relations, their De-
scriptions and their Maps; this must be an
unavoidable Fault in Discoverers; but
even that is advantageous to the Publick,
as much as their Successors are excited
to examine those Points more strictly, to
correct, explain and ascertain those Mi-
stakes.

In acknowledgment therefore of the Ser-
vice done us by those Illustrious Adventu-
ers and to make them some Sort of
amends for their Sufferings, let us trans-
mit their Names to Posterity in our Writ-
ings; let us applaud their Actions when
we read them, and let us commend their
relations. This here, most certainly de-
serves to be read and commended, for it is
curious, Extraordinary and Tragical. It
also, as has been said before, ingaging, at
this Conjunction, when there is a Design
of making Settlements in those Countries,
mentions, the Consequence whereof
may be most Honourable and Advantage-
ous to the Nation. The Travel thro' that
Country is one of the greatest and most full
of Difficulties that has been perform'd;
the Relation of it being made by an Eye
Witness

Witness, and in a natural, plain and particular Manner, deserves to be credited; but being only a Journal, it is not capable of admitting of Ornaments or Embellishments. The Reader will be pleas'd to excuse the Repetition of the same Words in it, on Account of the Impossibility of doing otherwise, and will think it enough that the Barrenness of the Narration is made Amends for by the Curiosity of the Subjects. I am of Opinion the small Notes I have added will not be displeasing, because they explain some Particulars, which are not very intelligible to such as are not us'd to read many Travels.

After having said the Good and the Bad of this *North America*, mentioning the Beauty and Excellency of its Climate and the Brutality of its People, and recited the infinite Hardships, those who design to travel must resolve to undergo, I am of Opinion it will be proper to say something of the late Monsieur *de la Sale*, who is the principal Person, and as it were, the Hero of this Relation, tho' having been murdered by his own Men, he fell the unfortunate Victim of the Discovery here treated of. It is also convenient to make known what went before that, which is contain'd in this Journal, and the present happy Consequence of that fatal Enterprize.

Here

Here follows what I have of my own particular Knowledge, and by what has been written.

Robert Cavelier, commonly call'd *Monsieur de la Sale*, a Native of *Roan*, of a good Family, having been educated in Piety and Learning, went over very young into *Canada* and took Delight in Trade, but more in Projects of new Discoveries up the Inland of those vast Countries. Intending to settle there and make that his Country, he purchased an Habitation in the Island of *Mont-real*, where has been built the second Town of *Canada*, sixty Leagues above *Quebeck*, which is the Capital, being also a Bishoprick, and the Residence of the Governor, the Intendant and the supreme Council. There are but only those two Towns in the Country, besides some Villages. They are both seated on the great River of *St. Laurence*, which coming from the S. W. is form'd or increased by the Waters of five prodigious fresh Water Lakes, running out one into another, and through them it passes to run down to discharge itself in the Ocean, at a very spacious Mouth, making Way for the Ships that design to penetrate into *Canada*.

Many Discoveries had been made to the Northward, before *Monsieur de la Sale's*

*Account of
Monsieur
de la Sale*

Sale's Time ; because there being Plenty of very good Furs, the Traders of *Quebeck* and *Mont-real*, by Means of the Adventurers call'd *Wood-Men*, from their traveling thro' the Woods, had penetrated very far up the Country that Way ; but none had advanc'd far towards the South or South-West, beyond Fort *Frontenac*, which is on the Lake *Ontario*, the nearest this Way of the five great Lakes. However, upon the Report of the Natives, it was supposed, that great and advantageous Discoveries might be made. There had been much Talk of the rich Mines of *St. Barbara*, in the Kingdom of *Mexico*, and some were tempted to give them a Visit.

*His Ch-
railer.*

Something was known of the famous River *Mississipi*, which it was supposed might fall into the South Sea, and open a Way to it. These Conjectures working upon Monsieur *de la Sale*, who being zealous for the Honour of his Nation, design'd to signalize the *French* Name, on Account of extraordinary Discoveries, beyond all that went before him ; he form'd the Design and resolv'd to put it in Execution. He was certainly very fit for it, and succeeded at the Expence of his Life ; for no Man has done so much in that Way as he did for the Space of
twenty

ing Plenty
 ders of *Que-*
 of the Ad-
 from their
 penetrated
 e Way ; but
 ls the South
 t *Frontenac*,
 the nearest
 kes. How-
 he Natives,
 nd advanta-
 made. There
 ich Mines of
 a of *Mexico*,
 give them a

the famous
 as supposed
 a, and open
 ures work-
 who being
 Nation, de-
 Name, on
 Discoveries,
 e him ; he
 d to put it
 nly very fit
 Expende of
 ne so much
 he Space of
 twenty

twenty Years he spent in that Employ-
 ment. He was a Man of a regular Be-
 haviour, of a large Soul, well enough
 learned, and understanding in the Mathe-
 maticks, designing, bold, undaunted,
 dexterous, insinuating, not to be discour-
 rag'd at any Thing, ready at extricating
 himself out of any Difficulties, no Way
 apprehensive of the greatest Fatigues,
 wonderful steady in Adversity, and what
 was of extraordinary Use, well enough
 versed in several Savage Languages. *M.*
de la Sale having such extraordinary Ta-
 lents, whereof he had given sufficient
 proofs upon several Occasions, gain'd the
 Esteem of the Governors of *Canada* ; and
Messieurs de Courcelles, Talon and *de Fron-*
tenac successively express'd the same, by
 often employing him in Affairs for the
 Honour and Advantage of the Colony.

The Government of the Fort of *Fronte-*
nac, which is the Place farthest advanc'd
 among the Savages, was committed to
 him, and he going over into *France*, in
 the Year 1675, the King made him Pro-
 prietor of it, upon Condition he should
 put it into a better Condition than it was,
 which he did, as soon as return'd to *Ca-*
nada. Then came back again to *Paris*,
 full of the new Informations he had gain'd
 touching the River *Mississipi*, the Country

is made
Proprietor
of Fort
Fronte-
nac.

runs through, the Mines, especially those of Lead and Copper, the navigable Rivers, and the Trade that might be carried on of Furs and the fine Wooll of those wild Bullocks, whereof there are infinite Numbers in the Forests. Being also furnish'd with better Accounts of that Country, than the Fables that were then publish'd, by the Name of a Voyage of the *Sieur Joliet*, he was well receiv'd at Court, and dispatch'd with the necessary Orders for proceeding on his Discoveries.

*His Reputation
makes E-
nemies.*

The great Reputation *Monsieur de la Sale* had gain'd, and his mighty Projects, occasion'd a Jealousy in some and Envy in others. His own Countrymen thwarted his Designs; but he surmounted all those Obstacles and return'd into *Canada*, about the Year 1678, with the Chevalier *Tonty*, an *Italian* Gentleman, a Person of Worth and that had serv'd, whom he gain'd to his Enterprize. He also pick'd up in the Country forty or fifty Persons fit for that Expedition, and among them were three *Recolets*, whom he carry'd over to try what might be done as to Christianity among the Savages; he was well acquainted with, and had a just Esteem for the Virtue, the Capacity and the Zeal of those good, religious Men,
who

cially those
vigable Ri-
ght be car-
e Wooll of
f there are
fts. Being
Accounts of
s that were
of a Voy-
as well re-
d with the
ding on his

nsieur de la
nty Projects,
e and Envy
men thwar-
mounted all
into Canada,
he Chevalier
a Person of
whom he
e also pick'd
fifty Persons
among them
he carry'd
done as to
avages; he
nd had a just
Capacity and
gious Men,
who

who alone first undertook the Mission into that new World, and who being seconded by others, have carry'd it on there, with so much Edification.

Monfieur de la Sale having spent two Years in going and coming, still thwarted by those who envy'd him in the Country, to such a Degree, that had it not been for an Antidote, he must have dy'd of Poison given him by some Villains, could not order his Affairs and begin his Expedition till the Year 1682. He set out at length, and to the End his Discovery of the *Mississipi* might be compleat, he caus'd Father *Hennepin*, a Recolet, with some others, to travel to the Northward, that they might find out the Source of that River, and they found it, about the 50th Degree of North Latitude. For his own Part, he proceeded to the Westward and found the River of the *Illinois*, which he call'd the River of *Beignelay*, and following its Course, came into the *Mississipi*, where the other discharges it self. He then concluded he had no more to do, but to run down to its Mouth, whether in the South Sea or the Gulph of *Mexico*. All along its Banks he found many Savage Nations, with whom, by Means of his Presents, he enter'd into Alliances, and gave the Country

Source of
the *Missi-
sipi*.

*Illinois
River.*

Country the Name of *Louisiana*, to honour the Name and Memory of our August Monarch, in whose Reign those Discoveries were made. At length, the Course of the *Mississipi* convey'd Monsieur *de la Sale* to its Mouths, as falling into the Gulph of *Mexico* in two Streams, and he arriv'd there in the Month of *April* 1682 or 1683, for the Dates of those who have writ concerning it, make either of those Years. He stay'd there some Days, to take Observations and place some Marks which he might know again, when he return'd. Being satisfied with having found some Part of what he sought, he return'd the same Way he had gone, and came again to *Quebeck* in *Canada*, in order to go over to *France*, and thence to make a Tryal to find that Mouth of the *Mississipi* by the Gulf of *Mexico*, which he had already discover'd by the Way of *Canada*, and to secure it; for he thought it much more advantageous to know it by the Way of the Sea, than to go thither by Land, because the Voyage through *Canada* is much longer and more troublesome, and can be perform'd but once a Year, whereas by the Way of the Bay of *Mexico* it is not longer, but is much more commodious, and may be perform'd
in

1682 or 1683

in all Seasons, either going or coming. He was also sensible that the said Mouth being once discover'd by Sea, afforded an easier and safer Communication with *Canada*, running up that noble River, the Navigation whereof is not interrupted by Falls, nor Torrents for above sixty Leagues towards its Source.

These Considerations mov'd Monsieur *de la Sale* to take another Voyage into *France*, where his Expedition having been commended and his new Project approv'd of, the King order'd him Vessels to return and carry on his Enterprize, the Particulars whereof are to be found in this Journal. That Affair, so well begun, seem'd to promise very advantageous Consequences; but it miscarried through the Perfidiousness and Villany of that noble Adventurer's own People.

This is what I have judg'd might serve as an Introduction to your Journal, if it shall not be thought to dishonour it, you may place it before the said Journal, and that which follows at the End of it, which will shew how far that great Enterprize of the Discovery of the *Mississipi* has been carried.

*The other
Part here
mention'd
is at the
End of the
Journal.*

THE
PREFACE.

Written by the

Sieur de *MITCHEL*,

Who Methodiz'd this Journal.

Notwithstanding the late Monsieur de la Sale's Voyage had a most unfortunate End, as to his own Person, yet that will not hinder Posterity, from ever allowing him the Title of a most renowned Traveller.

The History of his Enterprize will be acceptable to future Ages, for laying before them, the extraordinary Genius, the invincible Courage, and the undaunted Resolution of such a Man, who could contrive and execute

P R E F A C E.

execute the Means for discovering the remaining Part of the World.

And in regard that the Particulars of the Discovery of those large and immense Provinces, will always be the Object of curious and understanding Persons, it is not to be wonder'd, that after what has been said by Father Hennepin, a Recollet, the Chevalier Tonty and some others, we here now publish an Historical Journal of the last Voyage Monsieur de la Sale undertook into the Gulf of Mexico, to the Country of Louisiana, to finish what he had projected in his former Voyage, had not the Treachery of his own Men cut him off.

This Journal of Monsieur Joutel, where Monsieur Tonty makes mention in the Book that has been printed of the last Discoveries in America, Folio 319, has this peculiar, that it exactly contains what happened to Monsieur de la Sale, Day by Day, in that fatal Voyage, since his Departure from Rochelle to his Death, and till the Return of his Brother Monsieur Cavalier the Priest, Monsieur Cavalier his Nephew, the Reverend Father Anastasius, the Recollet, and the said Sieur Joutel, who in Order to return to France, took that long Journey by Land, from the Gulf of Mexico to Canada, being a Tract of above 300 Leagues.

Many

P R E F A C E.

Many Adventures of all Sorts, most of which are Tragical, will please the curious Reader; and above all he will admire the Protection of Divine Providence, in Conducting and Preserving that small Company throughout those vast Regions, and among so many barbarous Nations.

We do not here pretend to Criticise upon the Work of Father Hennepin, or that of Monsieur Tonty; but even their own Favourers cannot take it ill, that this Author does not sometimes say as they do; that he plainly delivers what he saw, and that he exposes to publick View all the Truths he was an Eye Witness to, without magnifying or inventing.

It is nevertheless true, that they may be all excus'd as to some Particulars; Father Hennepin and Monsieur Tonty may have seen some Things, that did not come to the Knowledge of Monsieur Joutel; but there is a Fact of great Consequence in the History of Monsieur de la Sale, which must not be pass'd over in Silence.

It is, that Monsieur Tonty, in his Book affirms, that Monsieur de la Sale at length found the Mouth of the Mississipi, and Monsieur Joutel asserts the contrary, and says, that is so far from being true, that during his last Progress towards the Ceniz, when the said Sieur Joutel was with him, and

P R E F A C E.

E.
Sorts, most of
se the curious
will admire the
ence, in Con
at small Com
regions, and
ions.

Criticise upon
in, or that
their own Fa
at this Author
ey do; that he
, and that he
the Truths he
out magnifying

at they may be
ulars; Father
nty may have
not come to the
; but there is
in the History
h must not be

y, in his Book
ale at length
ipi, and Mon
ry, and says
, that during
Cenis, when
with him, and
had

and never been parted, Monsieur de la Sale's
Principal Care was to enquire of all the Na-
tions they pass'd through, where the Mississi-
was, and could never hear any thing of
; that this is evidently made out, because
Monsieur de la Sale had found the Mouth
that River, he would infallibly have
taken another Way, and other Measures, and
the Appearances are on this Side, as may
be seen in this Relation.

However, this must be said in Behalf of
Monsieur Tonty, that he deliver'd it upon
the Report of Monsieur Cavelier the Priest,
and Brother to Monsieur de la Sale; which
Monsieur Cavelier might have Reasons to
give out they had discover'd the Missisipi,
in the same Views as oblig'd him to cor-
rect his Brother's Death.

Now in regard we shall see Monsieur de la
Sale, for some time ranging along the Coasts
of North America, to find out the Mouth
of that River, it will be proper to inform
those who have not seen his first Voyage, and
show them how it hapned that his Search
prov'd in vain, and he was oblig'd to land
in another Place.

After Monsieur de la Sale had discover'd
that vast Continent, which is a Part of
North America, from Canada, by the Way
of Montreal, going up the River of St.
Lawrence, then through the Country of the
Iroquois,

P R E F A C E.

Iroquois, the Illinois and others, all which he call'd Louisiana, his Design was to find a shorter and a safer Way, than that he had Travell'd by Land.

For this Reason it was, that having upon his first Discovery found the great River, call'd by the Barbarians Missisipi or Mechassipi, according to Father Hennepin, and to which he gave the Name of Colbert, guessing by its Course that it fell into the Bay of Mexico, he resolv'd with himself to find out the Mouth of it.

In short, he ran down that River, with more Danger and Toil than can be imagin'd, found it parted into two Streams and follow'd that which was most to the Northward, to the Place where it is lost in the Sea. He took the Latitude that Mouth lay in, and found it was between 28 and 29 Degrees North, as Monsieur Joutel affirms he heard him say. He left Marks there. return'd the same Way to Canada and thence into France, well pleased with his Discovery, which would have been very glorious, had he succeeded in his second Voyage.

But whether he did not take his Measures right, when he made his Observations ashore, or whether that River disgorges it self as a flat Coast, and only leaves some inconsiderable Mark of its Channel for such as come by Sea; it is most certain, that when he

came

P R E F A C E.

rs, all which
was to find
that he had
having upon
reat River,
sippi or Me-
Hennepin,
of Colbert,
into the Bay
himself to find
River, with
be imagin'd,
and follow'd
ward, to the
a. He took
, and found
s North, as
ard him say.
d the same
to France,
which would
succeeded in
his Measures
tions ashore,
it self at a
e inconfide-
such as come
at when he
came

me into the Bay of Mexico, he sought for
the same Mouth in Vain, during the Space
three Weeks, and was oblig'd to go ashore
the S. W. of the Place, where it really
as.
Monsieur Tonty, in his Book, Fol. 192.
tells us, that he was present when Monsieur
de la Sale took the Latitude of the Mouth of
the Mississipi, at his first Voyage, and says it
was between twenty two and twenty three De-
grees North; but that is a Mistake,
which must be assigned either to the Printer,
or Transcriber, for in the Map the said Mon-
sieur Tonty has added to his Book, he places
the said Mouth in about twenty six De-
grees and a Half of North Latitude, and
there is Reason to believe he errs in that
too.

Monsieur Joutel and some others are of
opinion, that the Mouth of that Branch
Monsieur de la Sale went down, is in the
Bay of the Holy Ghost, and actually between
the twenty eighth and twenty ninth Degrees
of North Latitude, as Monsieur de la Sale
found it. As for the other Channel, the
same Sieur Joutel believes it is farther to-
wards the S. W. and about the Shoals they
met with about the 6th of January, 1685,
between the twenty seventh and twenty eighth
Degrees of North Latitude, when they were
sailing

P R E F A C E.

sailing along the Coast of the Bay of Mexico, and that those Shoals were the Mark of a River discharging it self there, which they neglected to inquire into. If that be so, Monsieur de la Sale was very near it, and even pass'd along before both the Mouths, but unfortunately, without perceiving them, which was the main Cause of his Death and the Ruin of his Enterprize.

To conclude, it must be granted, that the Return of that small Number of Persons, from a Country so remote and through so many Dangers, is a visible Effect of the Divine Protection; so it is also an Effect of Heavenly Justice to have preserv'd those Witnesses, and to have brought them Home into Monsiuer de la Sale's Country, to retrieve his Reputation, which had been sully'd by his Enemies.

Monsieur de la Sale would have been taken for a Dreamer, and even for an Impostor; his Enterprize had been condemn'd, and his Memory blasted; but God would not permit the Honour of a Man of such singular Merit to suffer; it pleas'd him to preserve and bring Home unquestionable Witnesses, who, by Word of Mouth and other undoubted Proofs of the notable Discoveries made by Monsieur de la Sale, have stopp'd

C E.

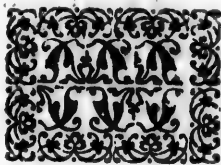
Bay of Mexico
ere the Mark
there, which
o. If that be
very near it
th the Mouths
receiving them
his Death and

wanted, that a
ber of Persons
through so ma
fect of the Di
so an Effect of
preserv'd tho
ht them Home
Country, to re
ad been fully

have been
en for an Im
en condemn'd
God would not
of such singu
pleas'd him to
anquestionable
uth and other
le Discoveries
have stopp'd
the

P R E F A C E.

the Mouths of his Enemies, and made out
the Truth of what has been asserted at the
beginning of this Discourse, viz. that Mon-
sieur de la Sale only wanted good Fortune to
secure him the Title of a great Man and a
famous Traveller.



Advertisement, to the British Gentry.

WHereas all Gentlemen ought to fit themselves betimes for those Employments which naturally fall to their Share, preferable to their Fellow Subjects; and that they who design in particular to serve their Prince Abroad, are obliged to understand the Interests and Pretensions of Foreign States, as well as the Laws and Constitution of their own Country: It has been judg'd very serviceable, by Persons of great Experience, to have the most celebrated Monsieur Wicquefort's Ambassade translated into the English Tongue, as being the only Book that perfectly exhausts this Matter, little being written on the Subject by other Nations in Comparison of the Italians, whose Books are too defective and abstracted for common Practice. Proposals will shortly be published, for printing the said Book by Subscription by the Undertaker Bernard Lintott between the two Temple-Gates

The Tragedy of *Jane Shore*, written in Shakespear's Style, by Nicholas Row Esq; as it is acted at the Queen's Theatre in the Hay-Market. pr. 1s. 6d.

The Rape of the Lock, an heroick comical Poem, in 5 Canto's, with 6 Copper Plates, by Mr. Pope. pr. 1s.

The Works of Monsieur de Moliere, translated, in 4 Vols. 12s. printed on fine Paper and new Elziver Letter.

The Clergy-man's Recreation, shewing the Pleasure and Profit of the Art of Gard'ning. By John Lawrence A. M. Rector of Yelvertoft in Northamptonshire, and sometime Fellow of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.

Miscellaneous Poems and Translations by several Hands, particularly, the first Book of Statius his *Thebais* translated. The Fable of Vertumnus and Pomona, from the 14th Book of Ovid's *Metamorphosis*. To a young Lady; with the Works of Voiture. On Silence. To the Author of a Poem entituled *Successio*. The Rape of the Lock. An Ode for Musick on St. Cecilia's Day at Windsor Forest. To the Right Honourable George Lord Lansdown. An Essay on Criticism. An Epigram upon Two or Three. All written by Mr. Pope.

Miss Gentry.

fit themselves be
which naturally fall
flow Subjects; and
serve their Prince
Interests and Pre
the Laws and Con
been judg'd ver
perience, to have
terior's Ambassado
as being the only
atter, little being
ds in Compariso
defective and st
osals will shortly b
k by Subscription
between the tw

ten in Shakespear
ed at the Queen
. 6d.

comical Poem, by
Mr. Pope. pr. 1s.
e, translated, in
new Elziver Le

ewing the Pleasur
By John Lawrence
hamptonshire, an
bridge.

Nations by sever
scations his Theba
and Pomona, from
sis. To a young
On Silence. To
o. The Rape
St. Cecilia's Day
rable George L
An Epigram upon
Pope.

AN
HISTORICAL JOURNAL
OF THE
Late Monsieur *de la Sale's*
LAST
VOYAGE
INTO
North America,
To Discover the
River *MISSISSIPPI*.

AT the Time when Monsieur *de la Sale*. *It is Mr.*
was preparing for his last Voyage into Joutel
North America, I happen'd to be at *that speaks*
in the Place where he and I were both born, *in this*
ing return'd from the Army, where I had *Journal.*
v'd sixteen or seventeen Years.
The Reputation gain'd by Monsieur *de la Sale*,
e Greatness of his Undertaking, the Natural
B Curiosity

July 1684



Curiosity which all Men are possess'd with, and my Acquaintance with his Kindred, and with several of the Inhabitants of that City, who were to bear him Company, easily prevail'd with me to make one of the Number, and I was admitted as a Voluntier.

Our Rendezvous was appointed at *Rochel*, where we were to imbark. Messieurs *Cavelier*, the one Brother, the other Nephew to Monsieur de la Sale, Messieurs *Chedeville*, *Planteroze*, *Thibault*, *Ory*, some others and I, repair'd thither in July 1684.

Departure
from Ro-
chel.

Monsieur de la Sale having provided all Things necessary for his Voyage, surmounted all the Difficulties laid in his Way by several ill-minded Persons, and receiv'd his Orders from Monsieur *Arnoult*, the Intendant at *Rochel*, pursuant to those he had receiv'd from the King, we sail'd on the 24th of July, 1684, being twenty four Vessels, four of them for our Voyage, and the others for the Islands and *Canada*.

Persons
that went.

The four Vessels appointed for Monsieur de la Sale's Enterprize, had on Board about two hundred and eighty Persons, including the Crews; of which Number there were one hundred Soldiers, with their Officers, one *Talon* with his *Canada* Family, about thirty Voluntiers, some young Women, and the rest hired People and Workmen of all Sorts, requisite for making of a Settlement.

ships.

The first of the four Vessels was a Man of War, call'd *le Joly*, of about thirty six or forty Guns, commanded by Monsieur de *Beaujeu*, on which Monsieur de la Sale, his Brother the Priest, two *Recolet* Fryars, Messieurs *Dain*
maville

possess'd with;
Kindred, and
of that City,
ny, easily pre-
e Number, and

nted at *Rochel*,
Messieurs *Cavelier*,
ephew to Mon-
ille, *Planteroze*,
l, repair'd thi-

g provided all
surmounted all
y by several ill-
s Orders from
at *Rochel*, pur-
from the King,
y, 1684, being
them for our
the Islands and

for Monsieur
a Board about
including the
were one hun-
ers, one *Talon*,
thirty Volun-
the rest hired
rts, requisite for

was a Man of
irty six or forty
de *Beaujeu*, ca-
s Brother the
Messieurs *Dain*
mauvill

aville and *Chedeville*, Priests, and I imbarc'd. *July 1684*
The next was a little Frigate, carrying six
Guns, which the King had given to Monsieur
de la Sale, commanded by two Masters; a
Flyboat of about three hundred Tuns Burden,
belonging to the Sieur *Maffiot*, Merchant at
Rochel, commanded by the Sieur *Aigron*, and
laden with all the Effects Monsieur *de la Sale*
had thought necessary for his Settlement, and a
small Ketch, on which Monsieur *de la Sale* had
imbarc'd thirty Tuns of Ammunition, and some
Commodities design'd for *Santo Domingo*.

All the Fleet, being under the Command of
Monsieur *de Beaujeu*, was order'd to keep to-
gether as far as *Cape Finisterre*, whence each was
to follow his own Course; but this was prevent-
ed by an unexpected Accident. We were come
into 45 Degrees 23 Minutes of North Latitude,
and about 50 Leagues from *Rochel*, when the
Boltspirit of our Ship, the *Joly*, on a sudden,
broke short, which oblig'd us to strike all our
other Sails, and cut all the Rigging the broken
Boltspirit hung by.

Boltspirit
lost.

Every Man reflect'd on this Accident ac-
cording to his Inclination. Some were of Opi-
nion it was a Contrivance; and it was debated
in Council, Whether we should proceed to *Por-
tugal*, or return to *Rochel*, or *Rochfort*; but the
latter Resolution prevail'd. The other Ships
design'd for the Islands and *Canada*, parted from
us, and held on their Course. We made back
to the River of *Rochfort*, whither the other
three Vessels follow'd us, and a Boat was sent
to acquaint the Intendant with this Acci-
dent. The Boat return'd some Hours after,
bringing along a Boltspirit, which was soon set in

Return to
Rochfort,

Aug. 1684. its Place, and after Monsieur *de la Sale* had confer'd with the Intendant, he left that Place on the first of *August*, 1684.

We sail'd again, steering W. and by S. and on the 8th of the same Month weather'd *Cape Finisterre*, which is in 43 Degrees of North Latitude, without meeting any Thing remarkable. The 12th, we were in the Latitude of *Lisbon*, or about 39 Degrees North. The 16th, we were in 36 Degrees, the Latitude of the *Streights*, and the 20th, discover'd the Island *Madera*, which is in 32 Degrees, and where Monsieur *de Beaujeu* propos'd to Monsieur *de la Sale* to anchor, and take in Water and some Refreshments.

*Difference
between the
Commanders.*

Monsieur *de la Sale* was not of that Mind, on Account that we had been but twenty one Days from *France*, had sufficient Store of Water, ought to have taken aboard Refreshments enough, and it would be a Loss of eight or ten Days to no Purpose; besides, that our Enterprise requir'd Secrecy, whereas the *Spaniards* might get some Information, by Means of the People of that Island, which was not agreeable to the King's Intention.

This Answer was not acceptable to Monsieur *de Beaujeu*, or the other Officers, nor even to the Ships Crew, who mutter'd at it very much, and it went so far, that a Passenger, call'd *Pager*, a *Hugonet* of *Rochel*, had the Insolence to talk to Monsieur *de la Sale* in a very passionate and disrespectful Manner, so that he was forc'd to make his Complaint to Monsieur *de Beaujeu*, and to ask of him, Whether he had given any Incouragement to such a Fellow to talk to him after that Manner. Monsieur *Beaujeu* made

de la Sale had
ft that Place

nd by S. and
weather'd Cape
of North La-
g remarkable
e of Lisbon, on
6th, we were
the Streights,
land Madera,
e Monsieur de
la Sale to an-
some Refresh-

that Mind, on
enty one Days
ore of Water,
Refreshments
f eight or ten
at our Enter-
the Spaniards
Means of th
as not agree

e to Monsieur
rs, nor even to
'd at it very
passenger, call'd
he Insolence to
very passionat
he was fair
eur de Beaujeu
had given any
v to talk to
n sieur Beaujeu
made

Into NORTH AMERICA.

5

Aug. 1684



made him no Satisfaction. These Misunder-
standings, with some others which happen'd be-
fore, being no Way advantageous to his Maje-
sty's Service, laid the Foundation of those tra-
gical Events, which afterwards put an unhappy
End to Monsieur de la Sale's Life and Under-
taking, and occasion'd our Ruin.

However, it was resolv'd not to come to an
Anchor at that Island, whereupon Monsieur de
Beaujeu said, That since it was so, we should
not in no where but at the Island of Santo Do-
mingo. We held on our Course, weather'd the
Island of Madera, and began to see those little
Flying Fishes, which to escape the Dorados, or
Salt-Heads, that pursue them, leap out of the
Water, take a little Flight of about a Pistol
Shot, and then fall again into the Sea, but very
often into Ships, as they are sailing by. That
Fish is about as big as a Herring, and very
good to eat.

On the 24th, we came into the Trade Wind,
which continually blows from East to West, and
is therefore call'd by some Authors *Ventus sub-*
solis, because it follows the Motion of the Sun.

Trade
Wind.

The 28th, we were in 27 Degrees 44 Minutes of
North Latitude, and in 344 of Longitude. The
29th, we had a Storm, which continu'd violent
two Days, but being right astern of us, we
lost Sight of the Ketch, for want of good
Sailing, but she join'd us again a few Days after.

The 6th of September, we were under the Tro-
pical Line of Cancer, in 23 Degrees 30 Minutes of North
Latitude and 319 of Longitude. There Mons.
de la Sale's Obstru'cting the Ceremony the Sailors
Ducking, gave them Occasion to mutter
again, and render'd himself privately odious. So

Ducking.

Sept. 1684



many have given an Account of the Nature of that Folly, that it would be needless to repeat it here; it may suffice to say, that there are three things to authorize it, 1. Custom. 2. The Oath administer'd to those who are duck'd, which is to this Effect, *That they will not permit any to pass the Tropics or the Line, without obliging them to the same Ceremony.* And 3, which is the most prevailing Argument, the Interest accruing to the Sailors upon that Occasion, by the Refreshments, Liquors or Money given them by the Passengers to be excus'd from that Ceremony.

Monfr. de la Sale, being inform'd that all Things were preparing for that impertinent Ceremony of Ducking, and that a Tub full of Water was ready on the Deck (*the French Duck in a great Cask of Water, the English in the Sea, letting down the Person at the Yard Arm*) sent Word that he would not allow such as were under his Command to be subject to that Folly, which being told to Monfr. de Beaujeu, he forbore putting of it in Execution, to the great Dissatisfaction of the inferior Officers and Sailors, who expected a considerable Sum of Money and Quantity of Refreshments, or Liquors, because there were many Persons to Duck, and all the Blame was laid upon Monfr. de la Sale.

Hispani-
ola Island.

On the 11th of September, we were in the Latitude of the Island of *Santo Domingo*, or *Hispaniola*, being 20 Degrees North, and the Longitude of 320 Degrees. We steer'd our Course West, but the Wind flatting, the ensuing Calm quite stopp'd our Way. That same Day Monfr. Dainville, the Priest, went aboard the *Belle*, to administer the Sacraments to a Gunner, who died a few Days after. Monfr. de la

of the Nature of
edless to repeat
, that there are

1. Custom. 2.
who are duck'd
they will not permit
, without obliging
3, which is the

Interest accruing
tion, by the Re
iven them by the
hat Ceremony.
form'd that a
impertinent Ca

at a Tub full of
(the French Duc
lish in the Sea, la
Arm) sent Word
as were unde
to that Folly
Beaujeu, he forb
the great Diff
cers and Sailors
m of Money and
Liquors, becau
Duck, and all the
de la Sale.

we were in the
Domingo, or Ha
rth, and the Lo
teer'd our Cour
the ensuing Cal
same Day Mon
aboard the Bar
aments to a Gun
er. Monfr. de

Sa

he went to see him, and I bore him Company.

Sept. 1684

The 21st, the Ketch, which we had before
lost Sight of, join'd us again; and some Com-
plaints being made to Monfr. de la Sale, by se-
veral private Persons that were aboard the Fly-
boat, he order'd me to go thither to accomo-
date those Differences, which were occasion'd
only by some Jealousies among them.

The 16th, we sail'd by the Island *Sombrero*,
and the 18th had hard blowing Weather, which
made us apprehensive of a Hurracan. The foul
Weather lasted two Days, during which Time,
we kept under a main Course and lost Sight of
the other Vessels.

Sombrero
Island.

A Council was call'd aboard our Ship, the
21st, to consider whether we should lie by for
the others, or hold on our Course, and it was
resolv'd, that, considering our Water began to
be short, and there were above five Persons
aboard, of which Number Monfr. de la Sale
the Surgeon were, we should make all the
we could, to reach the first Port of the I-
land *Hispaniola*, being that call'd *Port de Paix*,
or *Port Peace*, which Resolution was according-
ly register'd.

The 20th, we discover'd the first Land of
Hispaniola, being *Cape Samana*, lying in 19 De-
grees of North Latitude, and of Longitude 308.
The 25th we should have put into *Port de Paix*,
had been concerted, and it was not only the
most convenient Place for us to get Refresh-
ments, but also the Residence of Monfr. de Cus-
sac Governor of the Island *Tortuga*, who knew
that Monfr. de la Sale carried particular Or-
ders for him to furnish such Necessaries as he
was in Need of.

Cape Sa-
mana.

Sept. 1684

Tortuga
Island.

Notwithstanding these cogent Reasons, Mr. de Beaujeu was positive to pass further on in the Night, weathering the Island *Tortuga*, which is some Leagues distant from *Port de Paix* and the Coast of *Hispaniola*. He also pass'd Cape St. *Nicolas*, and the 26th of the said Month, we put into the Bay of *Jaguana*, coasting the Island *Guanabo*, which is in the Middle of that great Bay or Gulph, and in Conclusion, on the 27th we arriv'd at *Petit Gouave*, having spent 58 Days in our Passage from the Port of *Chef de Bois*, near *Rochel*.

This Change of the Place for our little Squadron to put into, for which no Reason could be given, prov'd very disadvantageous; and it will hereafter appear, as I have before observ'd, that those Misunderstanding among the Officers insensibly drew on the Causes from whence our Misfortune proceeded.

As soon as we had dropt Anchor, a *Piragua*, or great Sort of *Canoe*, came out from the Place, with Twenty Men, to know who we were, and hail'd us. Being inform'd that we were *French*, they acquainted us, that Monsieur de Cussy was at *Port de Paix* with the Marquis de St. *Laurent*, Lieutenant General of the *American* Islands, and Monsieur *Begon* the Intendant, which very much troubled Monsieur de la Sale, as having Affairs of the utmost Consequence to concert with them; but there was no Remedy, and he was oblig'd to bear it with Patience.

The next Day, being the 28th. we sang *Te Deum*, in Thanksgiving for our prosperous Passage. Monsieur de la Sale being somewhat recover'd of his Indisposition, went Ashore with several of the Gentlemen of his Retinue, to buy some

t Reasons, Mr.
urther on in the
ortuga, which is
de Paix and the
pass'd Cape St.
Month, we put
sting the Island
e of that great
on, on the 27th
g spent 58 Days
of *Chef de Bois*,

our little Squa-
Reason could be
ous; and it will
efore observ'd
ong the Officers
om whence our

hor, a *Piragua*,
from the Place
o we were, and
we were *French*,
ur de Cussy was
de St. Laurent,
can Islands, and
hich very much
s having Affairs
concert with
y, and he was

h. we sang Te
ur prosperous
eing somewhat
nt Ashore with
Retinue, to buy
some

ome Refreshments for the Sick, and to find
Means to send Notice of his Arrival, to Mes-
sieurs de *St. Laurent, de Cussy* and *Begon*, and signify
to them, how much he was concern'd that we
had not put into *Port de Paix*. He writ particu-
larly to Monsieur de Cussy, to desire he would
come to him, if possible, that he might be as-
sisting to him, and take the necessary
Measures for rendring his Enterprize successful,
that it might prove to the King's Honour and
service.

In the mean Time, the Sick suffering very
much Aboard the Ships, by Reason of the Heat,
and their being too close together, the Sol-
diers were put Ashore, on a little Island, near
Point Gouaves, which is the usual Burial-Place of
the People of the pretended Reformed Reli-
gion, where they had fresh Provisions, and
Bread baked on Purpose, distributed to them.
As for the Sick, I was order'd by Monsieur de
la Sale, to provide a House for them, whither
they were carry'd, with the Surgeons, and sup-
ply'd with all that was requisite for them.

Some Days after, Monsieur de la Sale fell dan-
gerously ill, most of his Family were also sick.
A violent Fever, attended with Lightheaded-
ness, brought him almost to Extremity. The
Posture of his Affairs, Want of Money, and the
Weight of a mighty Enterprize, without know-
ing whom to trust with the Execution of it,
made him still more Sick in Mind, than he was
in his Body, and yet his Patience and Resolution
surmounted all those Difficulties. He pitch'd
upon Monsieur le Gros and me to act for him,
caus'd some Commodities he had Aboard the
Ships to be sold, to raise Money; and through
our

Nov. 1684



Ketch taken by the Spaniards.

our Care, and the excellent Constitution of his Body, he recover'd Health.

Whilst he was in that Condition, two of our Ships, which had been separated from us on the 18th of September, by the stormy Winds, arriv'd at *Petit Gouave* on the 2d of October. The Joy conceiv'd on Account of their Arrival, was much allay'd by the News they brought of the Loss of the Ketch, taken by two *Spanish Piraguas*; and that Loss was the more grievous, because that Vessel was laden with Provisions, Ammunition, Utensils and proper Tools for the settling of our new Colonies; a Misfortune which would not have happen'd, had Monsieur de *Beaujeu* put into *Port de Paix*, and Messieurs de *St. Laurent*, de *Cussy*, and *Begon* who arrived at the same Time, to see Monsieur de la Sale did not spare to signify as much to him, and to complain of that Miscarriage.

Monsieur de la Sale being recover'd, had several Conferences with these Gentlemen, relating to his Voyage. A Consult of Pilots was called to resolve where we should touch before we came upon the Coast of *America*, and it was resolved to steer directly for the Western Point of the Island of *Cuba*, or for *Cape St. Antony*, distant about 300 Leagues from *Hispaniola*, there to expect the proper Season, and a fair Wind to enter the Gulph or Bay, which is but Two hundred Leagues over.

The next Care was to lay in Store of other Provisions, in the Room of those which were lost, and Monsieur de la Sale was the more pressing for us to imbark, because most of his Men deserted, or were debauch'd by the Inhabitants of the Place; and the Vessel call'd *P. Aimable*, being

Dec. 1684

stitution of his

tion, two of our
from us on the
Winds, arriv'd
Feber. The Joy
Arrival, was

brought of the
Spanish Piraguas;
ievous, because
visions, Ammu-
s for the settling
sfortune which

Monsieur de
and Messieurs
on who arriv'd
sieur de la Sale
to him, and to

cover'd, had se-
gentlemen, rela-
t of Pilots was
d touch before
merica, and it
r the Western
or Cape St. An-
ues from His-
per Season, and
or Bay, which
r.

Store of other-
se which were
the more pref-
st of his Men
ne Inhabitants
d *P. Aimable*,
being

being the worst Sailer of our little Squadron,
was resolv'd that should carry the Light, and
the others to follow it. Monsieur de la Sale, Mon-
sieur Cavalier his Brother, the Fathers Zenobius
and Anastasius, both Recolets, Monsieur Chede-
ville and I imbarc'd on the said *Aimable* and all
sail'd the 25th of November.

We met with some Calms, and some violent
Winds, which nevertheless carry'd us in Sight
of the Island of *Cuba*, on the 30th of the same
Month, and it then bore from us *N. W.* There
we alter'd our Course and steer'd *W.* and by *N.*
the 31st, the Weather being somewhat close,
we lost Sight of that Island, then stood *W. N. W.*
and the Sky clearing up, made an Observation
at Noon, and found we were in 19 Degrees,
30 Minutes of North Latitude; by which we
judg'd that the Currents had carry'd us off to
sea from the Island of *Cuba*.

On the first of December we discover'd the
Island *Cayman*. The 2d we steer'd *N. W.* and by
in order to come up with the Island of *Cuba*
in the Northern Latitude of 20 Degrees 32 Mi-
nutes. The 3d we discover'd the little Island of
Pines, lying close to *Cuba*. The 4th, we wer
her'd a Point of that Island, and the Wind
growing scant, were forc'd to ply upon a Bowl-
ing, and make several Trips till the 5th at
Night, when we anchor'd in a Creek, in 15
Fathom Water, and continued there till the
6th.

During that short Stay, Monsieur de la Sale
went Ashore with several Gentlemen of his Ro-
tinue on the Island of *Pines*, shot an Alligator
head, and returning Aboard, perceiv'd he had
lost two of his Volantiers, who had wander'd
into

Cayman
Island.

Island of
Pines,

Dec. 1684

into the Woods, and perhaps lost their Way. We fired several Musquet Shots to call them, which they did not hear, and I was order'd to expect them ashore, with 30 Musquetiers to attend me. They return'd the next Morning with much Trouble.

Alligator
catch.

In the mean Time, our Soldiers, who had good Stomachs, boil'd and eat the Alligator, Monsieur de la Sale had kill'd. The Flesh of it was white and had a Taste of Musk, for which Reason I could not eat it. One of our Hunters kill'd a wild Swine, which the Inhabitants of those Islands call *Maron*. There are of them in the Island of *Santo Domingo*, or *Hispaniola*, they are of the Breed of those the *Spaniards* left in the Islands when they first discover'd them, and run wild in the Woods. I sent it to Monsieur de la Sale, who presented the one Half to Monsieur de Beaujeu.

Wild Swine

Island of
Pines.

That Island is all over very thick wooded, the Trees being of several Sorts, and some of them bear a Fruit resembling the Acorn, but harder. There are Abundance of Parrots, larger than those at *Petit Gouave*, a great Number of Turtle Doves and other Birds, and a Sort of Creatures resembling a Rat, but as big as a Cat, their Hair reddish. Our Men kill'd many of them and fed heartily on them, as they did on a good Quantity of Fish, wherewith that Coast abounds.

We imbark'd again, as soon as the two Men who had stray'd were return'd, and on the 8th; being the Feast of the *Conception* of the Blessed Virgin, sail'd in the Morning, after having heard Mass, and the Wind shifting were forc'd to steer several Courses. The 9th we discover'd
Cape

lost their Way.
to call them,
was order'd to
Musquetiers to
the next Morning

diers, who had
the Alligator,
the Flesh of it was
for which Rea-
of our Hunters
Inhabitants of
are of them
or *Hispaniola*,
the *Spaniards* left
discover'd them,
sent it to Mon-
the one Half to

thick wooded,
s, and some of
the Acorn, but
of Parrots, lar-
great Number
ds, and a Sort
out as big as a
Ten kill'd many
a, as they did
where with that

s the two Men
and on the 8th;
of the Blessed
after having
ng were forc'd
we discover'd
Cape

Cape *Corrientes*, of the Island of *Cuba*; where we
ere first becalm'd; and then follow'd a stormy
Wind, which carried us away five Leagues to
the Eastward. The 10th we spent the Night,
making several Trips. The 11th, the Wind
coming about, we weather'd Cape *Corrientes*, to
make that of St. *Antony*; and at length, after
paying a considerable Time, and sounding, we
came to an Anchor the 12th, upon good Ground,
in fifteen Fathom Water, in the Creek form'd
by that Cape, which is in 22 Degrees of North
Latitude and 288 Degrees 35 Minutes of Lon-
gitude.

We stay'd there only till next Day, being the
13th, when the Wind seem'd to be favourable
to enter upon the Bay of *Mexico*. We made
ready and sail'd, steering *N. W.* and by *N.* and
N. N. W. to weather the said Cape and profe-
cess our Voyage: But by that Time we were
five Leagues from the Place of our Departure,
we perceiv'd the Wind shifted upon us, and not
knowing which Way the Currents set, we
steer'd *E.* and by *N.* and held that Course till
the 14th, when Monsieur *de Beaujeu*, who was
aboard the *Joly*, join'd us again, and having
confer'd with Monsieur *de la Sale* about the
Wind's being contrary, propos'd to him to re-
turn to Cape St. *Antony*, to which Monsieur *de*
la Sale consented, to avoid giving him any Cause
to complain, tho' there was no great Occasion
for so doing, and accordingly we went and an-
chor'd in the Place from whence we came.

The next Day, being the 15th, Monsieur *de*
la Sale sent some Men ashore, to try whether
we could fill some Casks with Water. They
brought Word, they had found some in the
Wood,

Dec. 1684.
The Capes
Corrien-
tes and St
Antony.

Dec. 1684



Wood, which was not much amiss, but that there was no Conveniency for rowling of the Casks; for which Reason Rundlets were sent, and as much Water brought in them, as fill'd six or seven of our Water Casks.

Mistake in
Monsieur
Tonti's
Account of
this Voyage.

The same Men reported, that they had found a glass Bottle, and in it a little Wine, or some other Liquor, almost dead. This was all the Provision we found in that Place, by which it appears, how much Monsieur Tonti was misinform'd, since in his Book, *Pag. 242*, he says, we found in that Island several Tun of Spanish Wine, good Brandy and Indian Wheat, which the Spaniards had left or abandon'd; and it is a meer Invention without any Thing of Truth.

The 16th, the Weather being still Calm, the Men went ashore again for five or six more Casks of Water. I was to have gone with them, had not an Indisposition, which I first felt in the Island of *Pines*, and afterwards turn'd to a tertian Ague, prevented me. Therefore I can give no Account of that Island, any further than what I could see from the Ships, which was Abundance of that Sort of Palm-Trees, in French call'd *Lataniars*, fit for nothing but making of Brooms, or scarce any other Use. That Day we saw some Smoaks, far within the Island, and guess'd they might be a Signal of the Number of our Ships, or else made by some of the Country Hunters, who had lost their Way.

The next Night preceding the 17th, the Wind freshning from the *N. W.* and starting up all on a sudden, drove the Vessel call'd *la Belle* upon her Anchor, so that she came foul of the Boltspit of the *Aimable*, carrying away the
Sprite

Dec. 1684.

amiss, but that rowling of the dlets were sent, n them, as fill'd

t they had found Wine, or some This was all the ce, by which it Tenti was misin- 7. 242, he says, l Tun of Spanis Wheat, which on'd; and it is a ing of Truth.

g still Calm, the ve or six more gone with them, h I first felt in rds turn'd to a Therefore I can d, any further e Ships, which Palm-Trees, in r nothing but any other Use, far within the be a Signal of e made by some had lost their

the 17th, the V. and starting Vessel call'd la the came foul of rying away the Sprit-

Spritsail-Yard and the Spritsail-Top-Sail-Yard, had had not they immediately veer'd out the ble of the *Aimable*, the Vessel *la Belle* would ve been in danger of perishing, but escap'd with the Loss of her Mizzen, which came by the Board, and of about a hundred Fathoms of Cable and an Anchor.

The 18th, the Wind being fresh, we made ready, and sail'd about Ten in the Morning, standing *North* and *N.* and by *W.* and held our Course till Noon; the Point of Cape *St. Anthony* bearing *East* and *West* with us, and so continu'd steering *North-West*, till the 19th at Noon, when we found our selves in the Latitude of 22 Degrees 58 Minutes *North*, and in 287 Degrees 5 Minutes Longitude.

Finding the Wind shifting from one Side to another, we directed our Course several Ways, but that which prov'd advantageous to us, was the fair Weather, and that was a great Help, so that scarce a Day pass'd without taking an Observation.

The 20th, we found the Variation of the Needle was 5 Degrees *West*, and we were in 26 Degrees 40 Minutes of North Latitude and 285 Degrees 10 Minutes Longitude. The 23th it grew very cloudy, which threaten'd stormy Weather, and we prepar'd to receive it, but came off only with the Apprehension, the Clouds dispersing several Ways, and we continu'd till the 27th in about 28 Degrees 14 Minutes, and both in the Latitude and Estimation it was judg'd, that we were not far from Land.

The Bark call'd *la Belle* was sent out to discover and keep before, sounding all the Way; and half an Hour before Sun-set, we saw the Vessel

Dec. 1684

 Vessel *la Belle* put out her Colours and lie by for us. Being come up with her, the Master told us, he had found an Owzy Bottom at thirty two Fathom Water. At eight of the Clock we sounded also, and found forty Fathom, and at ten, but twenty five. About Midnight, *la Belle* sounding again, found only seventeen, which being a Demonstration of the Nearness of the Land, we lay by for the *Foly*, to know what Monsieur de *Beaujeu* design'd, who being come up, lay by with us.

The 27th, Monsieur de *Beaujeu* sent the *Chevalier d'Aire*, his Lieutenant, and two Pilots to Monsieur de *la Sale*, to conclude upon the Course we were to steer, and it was agreed we should stand West North West till we came into six Fathom Water; that then we should run West, and when we had discover'd the Land, Boats should be sent to view the Country. Matters being thus agreed on, we sail'd again, sounding all the Way for the more Security, and about ten, were in ten or eleven Fathom Water, the Bottom fine greyish Sand and owzy. At Noon, were in 26 Degrees 37 Minutes of North Latitude.

The 28th, being in eight or nine Fathom Water, we perceiv'd the Bark *la Belle*, which kept a Head of us, put out her Colours, which was the Signal of her having discover'd Something. A Sailor was sent up to the Main-Top, who descry'd the Land, to the N. E. not above six Leagues Distance from us, which being told to Monsieur de *Beaujeu*, he thought fit to come to an Anchor.

There being no Man among us who had any Knowledge of that Bay, where we had been told

ours and lie by her, the Master Dwy Bottom at At eight of the found forty Fathoms five. About gain, found only onstration of the by for the *Joly*, *Beaujeu* design'd, us.

eu sent the *Che* and two Pilots to upon the Course agreed we should e came into sight should run West, the Land, Boats untry. Matters again, sounding rity, and about om Water, the yzy. At Noon, s of North La-

r nine Fathom *la Belle*, which Colours, which iscover'd Some the Main-Top, N. E. not above hich being told ought fit to come

us who had any e we had been told

ld the Currents were strong, and sate swiftly the *Eastward*, it made us suspect that we re fallen off, and that the Land we saw must be the Bay of *Apalache*, which oblig'd us on the 29th to steer *W. N. W.* still keeping along the Land, and it was agreed that the *Joly* should follow us in six Fathom Water.

The 30th, the *Chevalier d' Aire* and the second Pilot of the *Joly* came aboard us to confer and adjust by our Recknings what Place we might be in, and they all agreed, according to Monsieur de la Sale's Opinion, that the Currents had set us to the *Eastward*, for which Reason we held on our Course, as we had done the Day before to the *N. W.* keeping along the Shore till the first of *January* 1685. when we perceiv'd that the Currents forc'd us towards the Land, which oblig'd us to come to an Anchor in six Fathom Water.

We had not been there long, before the Bark *la Belle* made a Signal that she had discover'd Land, which we descry'd at about 4 Leagues Distance from us. Notice was given to Monsieur de Beaujeu, who drew near to us, and it was resolv'd to send some Person to discover and take an Account of the Land that appear'd to us.

Accordingly a Boat was man'd, and into it went Monsieur de la Sale, the *Chevalier de Aire* and several others; another Boat was also put on board which I went with Ten or Twelve of our Gentlemen, to join Monsieur de la Sale and the Bark *la Belle* was order'd to follow always keeping along the Shore; to the End that if the Wind shou'd rise, we might get aboard her, to lose no Time.

C

Some

Dec. 1684

Jan. 1685

First Land-
ding.

Some of those who were in Monsieur de la Sale's Boat, and the foremost, went ashore and saw a spacious plain Country of much Pasture Ground; but had not the Leisure to make any particular Discovery, because the Wind freshning, they were oblig'd to return to their Boat, to come aboard again; which was the Reason why we did not go quite up to the Shore, but return'd with them to our Ship. All that could be taken Notice of was a great Quantity of Wood along the Coast. We took an Observation and found 29 Degrees 10 Minutes of North Latitude.

The Second, there arose a Fog, which made us lose Sight of the *Joly*. The next Day, the Weather clearing up, we fir'd some Cannon-shot and the *Joly* answer'd, and towards the Evening we perceiv'd her to the Windward of us. We held on our Course, making several Trips till the Fourth in the Evening, when being in Sight and within two Leagues of the Land, we came to an Anchor to expect the *Joly*, for which we were in Pain.

Monsieur Joutel believes here was one of the Mouths of the Mississippi. See the Pref. and what follows.

The Fifth, we set Sail and held on our Course W. S. W. keeping along the Shore till about Six in the Evening, when we stood away to the Southward and anchor'd at Night in six Fathom Water. The Sixth, we would have made ready to sail, but the Pilot perceiving, that the Sea broke astern of us, and that there were some Shoals, it was thought proper to continue at Anchor, till the Wind chang'd, and we accordingly staid there the Sixth and all the Seventh. The Eighth the Wind veering about, we stood out a little to Sea, to avoid those Shoals, which are very dangerous, and anchor'd again a League from

int
from the
Belle ha
pear'd
sieur de
from w
plainly
Charts
the Bay
The
those S
was a fo
that th
discover
and as
thing n
de la Sa
confirm
Bay of
same Co
The
29 Deg
eleventh
la Sale
discover
were ma
because
sieur de
sign, to
In that
able Err
Men, w
Voyage
of the
titude N
travell'd

Jan. 1685

from thence. Upon Advice, that the Bark *la Belle* had discover'd a small Island, which appear'd between the two Points of a Bay, Monsieur *de la Sale* sent a Man up to the round Top, from whence both the one and the other were plainly to be seen, and according to the Sea Charts we had with us, that was suppos'd to be the Bay of the *Holy Ghost*.

The Ninth, Monsieur *de la Sale*, sent to view those Shoals. Those who went reported there was a sort of Bank, which runs along the Coast; that they had been in one Fathom Water and discover'd the little Island before-mention'd, and as for the Sand Bank there is no such thing mark'd down in the Charts. Monsieur *de la Sale* having examin'd the Recknings, was confirm'd in his Opinion, that we were in the Bay of *Apache*, and caus'd us to continue the same Course.

The Tenth, he took an Observation and found 29 Degrees 23 Minutes North Latitude. The eleventh, we were becalm'd, and Monsieur *de la Sale* resolv'd to go ashore, to endeavour to discover what he was looking for; but as we were making ready, the Pilot began to mutter because five or six of us were going with Monsieur *de la Sale*, who too lightly alter'd his Design, to avoid giving Offence to brutish People. In that Particular he committed an irretrievable Error; for it is the Opinion of Judicious Men, who, as well as I, saw the rest of that Voyage, that the Mouth of one of the Branches of the *Mississipi* River, and the same whose Latitude Monsieur *de la Sale* had taken, when he travell'd to it from *Canada*, was not far from

Jan 1685. that Place, and that we must of Necessity be near the Bay of the *Holy Ghost*.

*Monsieur
de la Sale's
Mistake.*

It was Monsieur *de la Sale*'s Design to find that Bay, and having found it, he had resolv'd to have set ashore about thirty Men, who were to have follow'd the Coast on the Right and Left, which would infallibly have discover'd to him that fatal River, and have prevented many Misfortunes; but Heaven refus'd him that Success, and even made him regardless of an Affair of such Consequence, since he was satisfy'd with sending thither the Pilot, with one of the Masters of the Bark *la Belle*, who return'd without having seen any Thing, because a Fog happen'd to rise; only the Master of the Bark said he believ'd there was a River opposite to those Shoals, which was very likely, and yet Monsieur *de la Sale* took no Notice of it, nor made any Account of that Report.

The Twelfth, the Wind being come about we weigh'd and directed our Course *S. W.* to get further from the Land. By an Observation found 25 Degrees 50 Minutes North Latitude, and the Wind shifting, and the Currents, which set from the Seaward driving us ashore, it was found convenient to anchor in four or five Fathom Water, where we spent all the Night.

The Thirteenth, we perceiv'd our Water began to fall short, and therefore it was requisite to go ashore to fill some Casks. Monsieur *de la Sale* propos'd it to me to go and see it perform'd, which I accepted of, with six of our Gentlemen who offer'd their Service. We went into the Boat, with our Arms, the Boat belonging to the Bark *la Belle* follow'd ours, with

to find that
resolv'd to
who were to
t and Left,
r'd to him
nted many
him that
less of an
was satis-
with one
le, who re-
ng, because
Master of
as a River
very likely,
Notice of
report.

ome about
se S. W. to
n Observa-
North La-
d the Cur-
d driving
to anchor
where we

ur Water
t was requi-
Monfieur
and see it
with six of
vice. We
s, the Boat
ow'd ours,
with

into NORTH AMERICA.

21

with five or six Men, and we all made directly *Jan. 1685*
for the Land. 

We were very near the Shoar, when we dis-
cover'd a Number of naked Men marching a-
long the Banks, whom we suppos'd to be na-
tive Savages. We drew within two Musket
Shots of the Land, and the Shore being flat, the
Wind setting from the Offing, and the Sea
running high, dropt our Anchors, for Fear of
staving our Boats.

When the Savages perceiv'd we had stopp'd,
they made Signs to us with Skins, to go to
them, shew'd us their Bows, which they laid
down upon the Ground, and drew near to the
Edge of the Shore; but because we could not
get Ashore, and still they continued their Sig-
nals, I put my Handkerchief on the End of
my Firelock, after the Manner of a Flag, and
made Signs to them to come to us. They
were some Time considering of it, and at last
some of them ran into the Water up to their
Shoulders, till perceiving that the Waves over-
whelm'd them, they went out again, fetch'd a
large Piece of Timber, which they threw into
the Sea, plac'd themselves along both Sides of
it, holding fast to it with one Arm, and swim-
ing with the other; and in that Manner they
drew near to our Boat.

Being in Hopes that Monfr. *de la Sale*, might
get some Information from those Savages, we
made no Difficulty of taking them into our Boat,
one after another, on each Side, to the Number
of five, and then made Signs to the rest to go
to the other Boat, which they did, and we car-
ry'd them on Board.

*Savages
came to the
Boat.*

*Carry'd
Aboard.*

Jan. 1685

~~~~~ Monsieur de la Sale was very well pleas'd to see them, imagining they might give him some Account of the River he sought after; but to no Purpose, for he spoke to them in several of the Languages of the Savages, which he knew, and made many Signs to them, but still they understood not what he meant, or if they did comprehend any thing, they made Signs, that they knew nothing of what he ask'd; so that having made them smook and eat, we shewed them our Arms and the Ship, and when they saw at one End of it some Sheep, Swine, Hens and Turkeys, and the Hide of a Cow we had kill'd, they made Signs that they had of all those Sorts of Creatures among them.

Return A-  
shore with  
Gifts.

We gave them some Knives and Strings of Beads, after which, they were dismiss'd, and the Waves hindring us from coming too near the Shore, they were oblig'd to leap into the Water, after we had made fast about their Necks, or to the Tuft of Hair they have on the Top of the Head, the Knives and other small Presents Monsieur de la Sale had given them.

They went and join'd the others who expected them, and were making Signs to us to go to them; but not being able to make the Shore, we stood off again and return'd to our Ship. It is to be observed, that when we were carrying them back, they made some Signs to us, by which we conceiv'd they would signify to us that there was a great River that Way we were pass'd, and that it occasion'd the Shoals we had seen.

The

in  
The  
weigh  
to get  
ing,  
were i  
tude.  
we he  
Time,  
Shore,  
upon  
Ashore  
same  
We  
hinder  
Sea, w  
the Sh  
fourtee  
of Go  
ours, a  
our E  
founde  
by Str  
which  
it ther  
conful  
oblig'd  
to retu  
Inclin  
Mo  
port w  
courage  
have s  
till the  
soon t  
fore'd  
when

pleas'd to  
him some  
; but to no  
eral of the  
knew, and  
they under-  
y did com-  
that they  
hat having  
wed them  
hey saw at  
Hens and  
had kill'd,  
those Sorts

Strings of  
miss'd, and  
; too near  
p into the  
about their  
y have on  
and other  
had given

o expected  
to go to  
the Shore,  
our Ship.  
e carrying  
to us, by  
nify to us  
Way we  
the Shoals

The

The Wind changing, the same Day, we weigh'd Anchor and stood to the Southward, to get into the Offing, till the 14th in the Morning, when we were becalm'd. At Noon, we were in 28 Degrees 51 Minutes of North Latitude. The Wind freshned, and in the Evening we held on our Course, but only for a short Time, because the Wind setting us towards the Shore, we were obliged to anchor again, whereupon Monsieur *de la Sale* again resolved to send Ashore, and the same Persons imbarck'd in the same Boats to that Effect.

We met with the same Obstacles, that had hinder'd us the Day before, that is, the High-Sea, which would not permit us to come near the Shore, and were obliged to drop Anchor in fourteen Foot Water. The Sight of Abundance of Goats and Bullocks, differing in Shape, from ours, and running along the Coast, heighten'd our Earnestness to be Ashore. We therefore founded to see whether we might get to Land by Stripping, and found we were on a Flat, which had four Foot Water, but that beyond it there was a deep Channel. Whilst we were consulting what to do, a Storm arose, which oblig'd Monsieur *de la Sale* to fire a Gun for us to return Aboard, which we did against our Inclination.

Monsieur *de la Sale* was pleas'd with the Report we made him, and by it, several were encouraged to go Ashore to hunt, that we might have some fresh Meat. We spent all that Night, till the next Morning, in Hopes of returning soon to that Place; but the Wind changing, forc'd us to weigh and sail till the Evening, when we drop'd Anchor in six Fathom Water.

Goats and  
Bullocks.

Jan. 1685

The Land which we never departed from very far, appear'd to us very pleasant, and having lain there till the 16th, that Morning we sail'd *W. S. W.* We weather'd a Point, keeping a large Offing, because of the Sea's beating upon it, and stood to the Southward. At Noon, we were in 28 Degrees 20 Minutes of North Latitude, and consequently found the Latitude declin'd, by which we were sensible, that the Coast tendred to the Southward. At Night we anchor'd in six Fathom Water.

The 17th, the Wind continuing the same, we held on our Course *S. W.* and having about Ten discover'd a Sort of River, Monsieur *de la Sale* caus'd Ten of us to go into a Boat, to take a View of that Coast, and see whether there was not some Place to land. He order'd me, in Case we found any convenient Place, to give him Notice either by Fire or Smoke.

Second  
Landing.

We set out, and found the Shoals obstructed our Descent. One of our Men went naked into the Water to sound that Sand Bank, which lay between us and the Land; and having shewn us a Place where we might Pass, we, with much Difficulty, forc'd our Boat into the Channel, and six or seven of us landed, after ordering the Boat to go up into that which had appeared to us to be a River, to see whether any fresh Water could be found.

As soon as we were landed, I made a Smoke to give Notice to Monsieur *de la Sale*, and then we advanc'd both Ways, without stragling too far, that we might be ready to receive Monsr. *de la Sale*, who was to come, as he did, soon after, but finding the Surges run high, he return'd

into  
turn'd,  
came

We  
dry So  
Times  
the Tr  
of the  
ever w  
Evenin  
Englis  
Notic  
Sunset  
we we

I g  
what  
him, h  
Water  
but ab  
the P  
be ma  
as soo

Aft  
steeri  
Calm  
Wan  
towa  
befor  
confi  
ficien  
self,  
Coun  
cord  
chor

Al  
der'e  
into

from very  
nd having  
we sail'd  
ng a large  
upon it,  
Noon, we  
orth Lati-  
titude de-  
that the  
t Night we

the same,  
ad having  
Monsieur  
to a Boat,  
e whether  
He order'd  
t Place, to  
smoke.

obstructed  
naked into  
, which lay  
ing shewn  
with much  
e Channel,  
dering the  
ppeared to  
fresh Wa-

le a Smoke  
, and then  
ragling too  
ive Monsr.  
did, soon  
gh, he re-  
turn'd

turn'd, and our Boat finding no fresh Water, *Jan. 1685*  
came back and anchor'd to wait for us. 

We walked about every Way, and found a dry Soil, tho' it seem'd to be overflow'd at some Times; great Lakes of salt Water, little Grass, the Track of Goats, on the Sand, and saw Herds of them, but could not come near them, however we kill'd some Ducks and Bustards. In the Evening, as we were returning, we miss'd an English Seaman, fir'd several Shot to give him Notice, searched all about, waited till after Sunset, and at last hearing no Tidings of him, we went into the Boat to return Aboard.

I gave Monsieur *de la Sale* an Account of what we had seen, which would have pleas'd him, had the River we discover'd, afforded fresh Water: He was also uneasy for the lost Man; but about Midnight we saw a Fire Ashore, in the Place we came from, which we supos'd to be made by our Man, and the Boat went for him as soon as soon as it was Day on the 18th.

After that, we made several Trips, still steering towards the *S.W.* and then ensued a Calm, which oblig'd us to come to an Anchor. Want of Water made us think of returning towards the River, where we had been the Day before. Monsr. *de la Sale* resolv'd to set a considerable Number of Men Ashore, with sufficient Ammunition, and to go with them himself, to discover and take Cognizance of that Country, and order'd me to follow him. Accordingly we sail'd back, and came to an Anchor in the same Place.

All Things necessary for that End being order'd on the 19th, Part of the Men were put into a Boat; but a very thick Fog rising, and  
taking



Jan. 1685. taking away the Sight of Land, the Compass was made use of, and the Fog dispersing as we drew near the Land, we perceiv'd a Ship making directly towards us, and that it was the *Joly*, where Monsr. de Beaujeu commanded, which rejoic'd us, but our Satisfaction was not lasting, and it will appear by the Sequel, that it were to have been wished, that Monsieur de Beaujeu had not joyn'd us again, but that he had rather gone away for France, without ever seeing of us.

His Arrival disconcerted the Execution of our Enterprize. Monsr. de la Sale, who was already on his Way, and those who were gone before him, return'd Aboard, and some Hours after, Monsr. de Beaujeu sent his Lieutenant, Monsr. de Aire, attended by several Persons, as well Clergymen as others, among whom was the Sieur Gabaret, second Pilot of the *Joly*.

Command-  
ers at Va-  
riance.

Monsieur d' Aire complain'd grievously to Monsieur de la Sale; in the Name of Monsr. de Beaujeu, for that said he, we had left him designedly; which was not true, for as I have said, the *Joly* lay at Anchor A-head of us, when we were separated from her; we fired a Gun to give her Notice of our Departure, as had been concerted, and Monsr. de Beaujeu answer'd it; besides that, if we had intended to separate from him, we should not have always held our Course in Sight of Land, as we had done, and that had Monsieur de Beaujeu held the same same Course, as had been agreed, he had not been separated from us.

There were afterwards several Disputes between the Captains and the Pilots, as well Aboard Monsieur de la Sale, as Aboard Monsieur

de

into

de Beaujeu  
bout set  
the Co  
affirm  
that th  
others,  
ver.

The  
whence  
conclu  
which  
ing it s  
low'd t  
Shoals  
and th  
near t  
observ  
da to  
told m

This  
de la S  
wards  
so doi  
Portu  
sage h  
pected  
confid  
and P  
said i  
partu  
sieur  
sieur  
Time  
only  
was r  
Place

Compass  
sing as we  
Ship mak-  
t was the  
manded,  
n was not  
quel, that  
onsieur de  
at he had  
ever see-

ecution of  
who was  
were gone  
ne Hours  
utenant,  
ersons, as  
hom was  
Joly.

vously to  
Monfr. de  
n design-  
ave said,  
when we  
n to give  
been con-  
it; be-  
ate from  
r Course  
that had  
e Course,  
eparated

utes be-  
as well  
Monsieur  
de

de Beaujeu, when those Gentlemen return'd, a-  
bout settling exactly the Place we were in, and  
the Course we were to steer; some positively  
affirming we were farther than we imagin'd, and  
that the Currents had carry'd us away; and  
others, that we were near the *Magdalen Ri-  
ver*.

The former of those Notions prevail'd,  
whence, upon Reflection, Monsieur de la Sale  
concluded, that he must be past his River,  
which was but too true; for that River empty-  
ing it self in the Sea by two Channels, it fol-  
low'd that one of the Mouths fell about the  
Shoals we had observ'd the sixth of the Month;  
and the rather because those Shoals were very  
near the Latitude that Monsieur de la Sale had  
observ'd, when he came by the Way of *Can-  
ada* to discover the Mouth of that River, as he  
told me several Times.

This Consideration prevail'd with Monsieur  
de la Sale to propose his Design of returning to-  
wards those Shoals. He gave his Reasons for  
so doing and exposed his Doubts; but his ill  
Fortune made him not be regarded. Our Pas-  
sage had taken up more Time than had been ex-  
pected, by Reason of the Calms; there was a  
considerable Number of Men aboard the *Joly*,  
and Provisions grew short, insomuch that they  
said it would not hold out to return, if our De-  
parture were delay'd. For this Reason Mon-  
sieur de Beaujeu demanded Provisions of Mon-  
sieur de la Sale; but he asking enough for a long  
Time, Monsieur de la Sale answer'd, he could  
only give him enough for a Fortnight, which  
was more Time than was requisite to reach the  
Place he intended to return to; and that besides  
he

Jan. 1685

~~~~~

They pass
the Mouth
of the Mis-
sippi.

Jan. 1685 he could not give him more Provisions, without rummaging all the Stores to the Bottom of the Hold, which would endanger his being cast away. Thus nothing was concluded, and Monsieur *de Beaujeu* return'd to his own Ship.

*Third
Landing.*

In the mean Time, Want of Water began to pinch us, and Monsieur *de la Sale* resolv'd to send to look for some about the next River. Accordingly he order'd the two Boats that had been made ready the Day before, to go off. He was aboard one of them himself, and directed me to follow him. Monsieur *de Beaujeu* also commanded his Boat to go for Wood. By the Way we met the said *Sieur de Beaujeu* in his Yawl, returning from Land, with the *Sieur Minet*, an Ingenier, who told us, they had been in a Sort of salt Pool, two or three Leagues from the Place where the Ships were at Anchor, we held on our Way and landed.

One of our Boats, which was gone ahead of us, had been a League and a half up the River, without finding any fresh Water in its Channel ; but some Men wandering about to the right and left, had met with divers Rivulets of very good Water, wherewith many Casks were fill'd.

We lay ashore, and our Hunters having that Day kill'd good Store of Ducks, Bustards and Teal, and the next Day two Goats, Monsieur *de la Sale* sent Monsieur *de Beaujeu* Part. We feasted upon the rest, and that good Sport put several Gentlemen that were then aboard Monsieur *de Beaujeu*, among whom were Monsieur *du Hamel*, the Ensign and the King's Clerk, upon coming ashore to partake of the Diversi-
on ; but they took much Pains and were not successfull in their Sport.

In

into

In the
with W
sieur de
d' Airo
with M
would n
of them
Monfieur
Beaujeu
for 15
to the
the Bra
good R
have b
as to th
his Cap
land h
some D
in the
Duri
Sale be
what h
on Disc
and co
were.
us alon
in so t
perceiv
lost M
We
finding
little
Slough
Lakes
having
cess.

Jan. 1683



Voyage

, without
tom of the
being cast
and Mon-
ship.

r began to
resolv'd to
River. Ac-
that had
go off. He
directed
aujeu also
. By the
jeu in his
the Sieur
had been
e Leagues
t Anchor,

ahead of
the River,
Channel ;
the right
ts of very
isks were

ving that
stards and
Monsieur
art. We
od Sport
n aboard
re Mon-
g's Clerk,
Diversifi-
were not
In

In the mean Time many Casks were fill'd with Water, as well for our Ship as for Monsieur de Beaujeu's. Some Days after Monsieur d' Aire the Lieutenant, came ashore to confer with Monsieur de la Sale, and to know how he would manage about the Provisions ; but both of them persisting in their first Proposals and Monsieur de la Sale perceiving that Monsieur de Beaujeu would not be satisfied with Provisions for 15 Days, which he thought sufficient to go to the Place where he expected to find one of the Branches of the *Mississipi*, which he with good Reason believ'd to be about the Shoals, I have before spoken of, nothing was concluded as to that Affair. Monsieur d' Aire return'd to his Captain, and Monsieur de la Sale resolv'd to land his Men ; which could not be done for some Days, because of the foul Weather ; but in the mean Time we kill'd much Game.

During this little Interval, Monsieur de la Sale being impatient to get some Intelligence of what he sought after, resolv'd to go himself upon Discovery, and to seek out some more useful and commodious River than that where they were. To this Purpose he took five or six of us along with him. We set out one Morning in so thick a Fog, that the hindmost could not perceive the Track of the foremost, so that we lost Monsieur de la Sale for some Time.

We travel'd till about three in the Afternoon, finding the Country for the most Part Sandy, little Grass, no fresh Water, unless in some Sloughs, the Track of abundance of wild Goats, Lakes full of Ducks, Teals, Water-Hens, and having taken much Pains return'd without Success.

Account of
the Country

The

Jan. 1685



The next Morning, Monsieur de la Sale's Indian, going about to find wild Goats, came to a Lake, which had a little Ice upon it, the Weather being cold, and Abundance of Fish dying about the Edges of it. He came to inform us, we went to make our Provision of them, there were some of a prodigious Magnitude, and among the rest extraordinary large Trouts, or else they were some Sort of Fish very like them. We caused some of each of a Sort to be boil'd in salt Water, and found them very good. Thus having Plenty of Fish and Flesh, we began to use ourselves to eat them both, without Bread.

Whilst we liv'd thus easy enough, Monsieur de la Sale expected with Impatience to know what Resolution Monsieur de Beaujeu would take; that he might either go to the Place, where he expected to find the *Mississipi*, or follow some other Course; but at last, perceiving that his Affairs did not advance, he resolv'd to put his own Design in Execution, the Purport whereof was to land one hundred and twenty, or one hundred and thirty Men to go along the Coast and continue it, till they had found some other River, and that at the same Time the Bark *la Belle* should hold the same Course at Sea, still keeping along the Coast, to relieve those Ashore in Time of Need.

He gave me and Monsieur *Moranget*, his Nephew, the Command of that small Company, he furnish'd us with all Sorts of Provisions for eight, or ten Days, as also Arms, Tools and Utensils we might have Occasion for, of which every Man made his Bundle. He also gave us written Instructions of what we were to do, the

Signals

into

Signals

on the

We

first Day

on a lit

which m

had been

the 5th,

ranget b

Van.

I will

sonal A

or of no

them be

will pro

March

ed and

on a con

hear of

our Ship

But o

and non

apprehe

casion'd

sieur de

of our

Resolut

we shou

go on to

locks;

and we

many o

set som

Work

up the

a Sale's In-

, came to

on it, the

of Fifth dy-

to inform

them, there

le, and a-

Trouts, or

like them.

e boil'd in

od. Thus

began to

ut Bread.

Monfieur

to know

jeu would

the Place,

or follow

iving that

v'd to put

ort where-

wenty, or

along the

ound some

e the Bark

t Sea, still

se Ashore

anget, his

ll Compa-

Provisions

Tools and

of which

so gave us

to do, the

Signals

Signals we were to make; and thus we fet out *Feb. 1685.*
on the Fourth of February.

We took our Way along the Shore. Our *Men sent*
first Day's Journey was not long, we encamp'd *by Land*
on a little rising Ground, heard a Cannon shot, *to disco-*
which made us uneasy, made the Signals that *ver.*
had been appointed, and the next Day, being
the 5th, we held on our March, Monsieur Mo-
ranget bringing up the Rear, and I leading the
Van.

I will not spend Time in relating several per-
sonal Accidents, inconsiderable in themselves,
or of no Consequence, the most considerable of
them being the Want of fresh Water; but
will proceed to say, that after three Days
March we found a great River, where we halt-
ed and made the Signals agreed on, encamping
on a commodious Spot of Ground till we could
hear of the Boat, which was to follow us, or of
our Ships.

But our Provisions beginning to fall short,
and none of our Ships appearing, being besides
apprehensive of some unlucky Accident oc-
casion'd by the Disagreement between Mon-
sieur de la Sale and Monsr. de Beaujeu, the Chief
of our Company came together to know what
Resolution we should take. It was agreed, that
we should spare our Provisions to endeavour to
go on to some Place where we might find Bul-
locks; but it was requisite to cross the River,
and we knew not how, because we were too
many of us, and therefore it was decreed to
set some Carpenters there were among us at
Work to build a little Boat, which took them
up the eleventh and twelfth of February.

The

Feb. 1685.



The 13th, we were put out of our Pain by two Vessels we discover'd at Sea, which we knew to be the *Joly* and *la Belle*, to whom we made our Signals with Smoke. They came not in then, because it was late, but the next Day being the 14th in the Morning, the Boat, with the *Sieur Barbier* and the Pilot of the Bark *la Belle* come up, and both sounded the Mouth of the River.

A fine River.

They found on the Bar, from ten to twelve Foot Water, and within it from five to six Fathom; the Breadth of the River being about half a Quarter of a League. They sounded near the Island, which lies between the two Points of the Bay, and found the same Depth. The Boat of the *Joly* came and sounded on the other Side of the Channel, and particularly along the Shoals, I know not to what Purpose. The same Day, Monsieur de la Sale, for whom we were much in Pain, came also, and as soon as he arrived, he caus'd the Boat to be laden with such Provisions as we stood in Need of, but the Wind being contrary, it could not come to us till the next Day, being the 15th.

That same Day, Monsr. de la Sale came Ashoar to view the Place and examine the Entrance into the River, which he found to be very good. Having consider'd all Particulars, he resolv'd to send in the Bark *la Belle* and l' *Aimable*, that they might be under Shelter, to which Purpose, he order'd to sound, and to know whether those two Vessels could both come in that same Day. Monsieur de Beaujeu caus'd also the Place to be sounded, and lay Ashoar on the other Side of the River, where he took Notice there were Vines which run up the Trees, like

our

our Wall Vines, some Woods and the Carcasses of Bullocks, which he supposed to have died with Thirst. Feb. 1685

The 16th, the Pilots of the *Joly, l' Aimable* and *la Belle*, went again to sound, they found the Entrance easy, and gave it under their Hands. The 17th, they fix'd Stakes to mark out the Way, that the Vessels might come safe in. All Things seem'd to promise a happy Event.

The 18th, the Chevalier *d'Aire* came ashore, to confer with Monsieur *de la Sale*, who being desirous to have the Fly-boat *l' Aimable* come in that Day, order'd the most weighty Things in her to be unloaded, as the Cannon, the Iron and some other Things. It was my good Fortune that my Chest stood in the Way, and was also unloaded, but that Unlading could not be done till the next Day, being the 19th. That being perform'd, the Captain affirm'd it would go in at 8 Foot Water.

The 20th, Monsieur *de la Sale* sent Orders to that Captain to draw near the Bar, and to come in at high Water, of which a Signal should be given him; he also order'd the Pilot of the Bark *la Belle* to go aboard the Flyboat, to be assisting when it came in. The Captain would not receive him aboard, saying, he could carry in his Ship without his Help. All these Precautions prov'd of no Use; Monsieur *de la Sale* could not avert his ill Fate. He having taken Notice of a large Tree on the Bank of the River, which he judg'd fit to make a Canoe, sent or 8 Workmen to hew it down, two of whom return'd some Time after, in a great Fright, and told him, they had narrowly escap'd being

D

taken

Trees, like

our

Feb. 1685

*A Company
of Savages.*

taken by a Company of Savages, and that they believ'd the others had fallen into their Hands. Monsieur de la Sale order'd us immediately to handle our Arms, and to march with Drums beating towards the Savages, who seeing us in that Posture, fac'd about and went off.

Monsieur de la Sale being desirous to join those Savages, to endeavour to get some Information from them, order'd Ten of us to lay down our Arms and draw near them, making Signs to them, at the same Time, to come to us. When they saw us in that Posture and unarm'd, most of them also laid down their Bows and Arrows and came to meet us, carressing us after their Manner, and stroaking first their own Breasts and then ours, then their own Arms and afterwards ours. By these Signs they gave us to understand that they had a Friendship for us, which they express'd by laying their Hands on their Hearts, and we did the same on our Part.

*Their
Friendly
Behaviour.*

Six or seven of those Savages went along with us, and the rest kept three of our Men, in the Nature of Hostages. Those who went with us were made much of, but Monsieur de la Sale could learn nothing of them, either by Signs or otherwise; all they could make us understand was, that there was good hunting of Bullocks in the Country. We observ'd, that their Language consisted in a Cry, fetch'd from the Bottom of the Throat, not unlike the Call of a Hen to gather her Chickens. Monsieur de la Sale gave them some Knives, Hatchets and other Trifles, with which they seem'd well pleased, and went away.

Monsieur de la Sale was con

Feb. 1685

d that they
their Hands.
mediately to
with Drums
seeing us in
off.

to join those
information
y down our
ng Signs to
o us. When
arm'd, most
and Arrows
s after their
own Breasts
ns and after-
ave us to un-
dship for us,
their Hands
same on our

t along with
Men, in the
went with us
eur de la Sale
r by Signs or
understand
of Bullocks
at their Te
he Bottom of
of a Hen to
e la Sale gave
ther Trifles
d, and went

Monsieur de la Sale was glad to be rid of those People, because he was willing to be present when the Flyboat came in; but his ill Fate would not permit it. He thought fit to go himself along with those Savages, and we follow'd him, thinking to have found our Men in the same Place where we left them; but perceiv'd on the Contrary, that the Savages had carried them away to their Camp, which was a League and half from us, and Monsieur de la Sablonniere, Lieutenant of Foot, being one of those the Savages had taken with them. Monsieur de la Sale resolv'd to go himself to fetch him away, an unhappy Thought which cost him dear.

As we were on our Way towards the Camp of the Savages, happening to look towards the Sea, we saw the Flyboat *P. Aimable* under Sail, which the Savages who were with us admir'd, and Monsieur de la Sale observing it narrowly, told us, those People steer'd wrong, and were standing towards the Shoals, which made him very uneasy, but still we advanc'd. We arriv'd at the Camp of the Savages, which stood upon a Eminence, and consisted of about Fifty Cottages made of rush Mats, and others of dry'd Skins, and built with long Poles, bow'd round at the Top, like great Ovens, and most of the Savages sitting about, as if they were upon the Watch.

We were still advancing into the Village, when we heard a Cannon Shot, the Noise whereof struck such a Dread among the Savages, that they all fell flat upon the Ground; but Monsieur de la Sale and we were too sensible it was a Signal that our Ship was aground, which

Monsieur de la Sale was confirm'd by seeing them furl their Sails;

Their
Camp.

Feb. 1685.

However we were gone too far to return; our Men must be had, and to that Purpose, we must proceed to the Hut of the Commander in Chief.

As soon as we arrived there, Monfr. de la Sale was introduc'd; many of the *Indian* Women came in, they were very deform'd and all naked, excepting a Skin girt about them, which hung down to their Knees. They would have led us to their Cottages, but Monfr. de la Sale had order'd us not to part, and to observe whether the *Indians* did not draw together, so that we kept together, standing upon our Guard, and I was always with him.

Their Ex-
certain-
ment.

They brought us some Pieces of Beef, both fresh and dry'd in the Air and Smoke, and Pieces of Porpois, which they cut with a Sort of Knife, made of Stone, setting one Foot upon it, and holding with one Hand, whilst they cut with the other. We saw nothing of Iron among them. They had given our Men, that came with them, to eat, and Monfr. de la Sale being extraordinary uneasy, we soon took Leave of them to return. At our going out, we observ'd about forty Canoes, some of them like those Monfr. de la Sale had seen on the *Mississipi*, which made him conclude he was not far from it.

L' Aima-
ble cast a-
way.

We soon arrived at our Camp, and found the Misfortune, Monfr. de la Sale had apprehended, was but too certain. The Ship was stranded on the Shoals. The ill Management of the Captain, or of the Pilot, who had not steer'd by the Stakes placed for that Purpose; the Cries of a Sailor posted on the Main-top, who cry'd amain, *Loof*, which was to steer towards

return; our
se, we must
nmander in

Monfr. de la
Indian Wo-
eform'd and
bout them,
They would
Monfr. de la
d to observe
together, fo
n our Guard,

Beef, both
Smoke, and
with a Sort
e Foot upon
nilst they cut
g of Iron a-
r Men, that
fr. de la Sale
n took Leave
g out, we ob-
of them like
the *Mississi*
not far from

, and found
had appre-
he Ship was
Management
who had not
hat Purpose;
e Main-top,
as to steer
towards

into NORTH AMERICA.

27

Feb. 1685

towards the Passage mark'd out, whilst the wicked Captain cry'd, *Come no nearer*, which was to steer the contrary Course; the same Captain's Carelesness in not dropping his Anchor, as soon as the Ship touch'd, which would have prevented her sticking aground; the Folly of lowering his Main-Sheet and hoisting out his Sprit-Sail, the better to fall into the Wind, and secure the Shipwreck; the Captain's refusing to admit the Pilot of the Bark *la Belle*, whom Monsieur de la Sale had sent to assist him; the sounding upon the Shoals to no Purpose, and several other Circumstances reported by the Ship's Crew and those who saw the Management, were infallible Tokens and Proofs, that the Mischief had been done designedly and adviseably, which was one of the blackest and most detestable Actions that Man could be guilty of.

This Misfortune was so much the greater, because that Vessel contain'd almost all the Ammunition, Utensils, Tools and other Necessaries for Monfr. de la Sale's Enterprize and Settlement. He had need of all his Resolution to bear up against it; but his Intrepidity did not forsake him, and he apply'd himself, without grieving, to Remedy what might be. All the Men were taken out of the Ship; he desir'd Monsieur de Beaujeu to lend him his long Boat, to help save as much as might be. We began with Powder and Meal. About thirty Hogheads of Wine and Brandy were saved, and Fortune being incens'd against us, two Things contributed to the total Loss of all the rest:

Feb. 1685.



The first was, that our Boat, which hung at the Stern of the Ship run A-ground, was maliciously stav'd in the Night, so that we had stoe left but Monsieur *de Beaujeu's*. The second, that the Wind blowing in from the Offing, made the Waves run high, which bearing violently against the Ship, split her, and all the light Goods were carry'd out at the opening, by the Water. This last Misfortune happen'd also in the Night. Thus every Thing fell out most unhappily, for had that befallen in the Day, Abundance of Things might have been saved.

Whilst we were upon this melancholly Employment, about an hundred, or an hundred and twenty of the Natives came to our Camp, with their Bows and Arrows. Monsieur *de la Sale* order'd us to handle our Arms, and stand upon our Guard. About twenty of those *Indians* mix'd themselves among us, to observe what we had saved of the Shipwreck, upon which, there were several Sentinels, to let none come near the Powder.

The rest of the *Indians* stood in Parcels, or Pelotons. Monfr. *de la Sale*, who was acquainted with their Ways, order'd us to observe their Behaviour, and to take Nothing from them, which nevertheless did not hinder some of our Men from receiving some Pieces of Meat. Some Time after, when the *Indians* were about departing, they made Signs to us to go a Hunting with them; but besides that, there was sufficient Cause to suspect them, we had enough other Business to do. However we ask'd, whether they would barter for any of their Canoes, which they agreed to. The *Sieur Barbier* went along

with

with
brou
So
Cou
dry
upon
and
part
der
of th
with
beyo
We
and
and a

Ha
Lake
Won
havin
that
her C
Wat
ter w
Won
perce
Har
lar N
king
Peop
A
India
them
us co
the f
vvhi
Tim

ich hung at
was small.
we had none
The second,
the Offidg,
beating vid-
and all the
he opening,
ne happen'd
hing fell out
fallen in the
t have been

ncholly Em-
hundred and
Camp, with
ur *de la Sale*
d stand upon
those *Indians*
ve what we
which, there
e come near

a Parcels, or
as acquaint-
bservé their
from them,
some of our
Meat. Some
e about de-
go a Hunt-
ere was suffi-
nough other
whether they
does, which
went along
with

into NORTH AMERICA.

39

Feb. 1685.

with them, purchas'd two for Hatchets and brought them.

Some Days after, we perceiv'd a Fire in the Country, which spread it self and burnt the dry Weeds, still drawing towards us; whereupon, *Monfr. de la Sale* made all the Weeds and Herbs that were about us, be pull'd up, and particularly all about the Place where the Powder was. Being desirous to know the Occasion of that Fire, he took about twenty of us along with him, and we march'd that Way, and even beyond the Fire, without seeing any Body. We perceiv'd that it run towards the *W. S. W.* and judg'd it had begun about our first Camp, and at the Village next the Fire.

Having spy'd a Cottage near the Bank of a Lake, we drew towards it, and found an old Woman in it, who fled as soon as she saw us; but having overtaken and given her to understand, that we would do her no Harm, she return'd to her Cottage, where we found some Pitchers of Water, of which we all drank. Some Time after we saw a Canoe coming, in which were two Women and a Boy, vvho being landed, and perceiving vve had done the old Woman no Harm, came and imbraced us in a very particular Manner, blowing upon our Ears and making Signs to give us to understand, that their People vvere a hunting.

A fevv Minutes after, seven or eight of the *Indians* appeared, vvho, it is likely, had hid themselves among the Weeds vvhen they savv us coming. Being come up they saluted us, after the same Manner, as the Women had done, vvhich made us laugh. We staid there some Time vvith them. Some of our Men barter'd

D 4.

Knives

Odd Salu-
tation.

Feb. 1685.

Knives for Goats Skins, after which we return'd to our Camp; Being come thither, Monsieur de la Sale made me go aboard the Bark *la Belle*, vvhere he had imbark'd Part of the Povvder, vvith positive Orders not to carry, or permit any Fire to be made there, having sufficient Cause to fear every thing, after vvhat had happened. For this Reason they carry'd me and all that vvere vvith me, our Meat every Day.

During this time it was that *l'Aimable* opening in the Night, the next Morning we saw all the light Things that were come out of it floating about, and Monsieur de la Sale sent Men every Way, who gather'd up about 30 Casks of Wine and Brandy, and some of Flesh, Meal and Grain.

When we had gather'd all, as well what had been taken out of the Ship-wreck'd Vessel as what could be pick'd up in the Sea, the next Thing was to regulate the Provisions we had left proportionably to the Number of Men we were; and there being no more Bisket, Meal was deliver'd out, and with it we made Hasty Pudding with Water, which was none of the best; some large Beans and *India* Corn, part of which had taken wet; and every thing was distributed very discreetly. We were much incommoded for want of Kettles, but Monsieur de Beaujeu gave Monsieur de la Sale one, and he order'd another to be brought from the Bark *la Belle*, by which means we were well serv'd.

We were still in want of Canoes. Monsieur de la Sale sent to the Camp of the *Indians* to barter for some, and they who went thither observ'd, that those People had made their Advantage of our Ship-wreck, and had some Bales

of

we return'd
Monsieur
ark la Belle,
e Povvder,
or permit
g sufficient
at had hap-
d me and
very Day.
imable open-
ng we saw
e out of it
le sent Men
t 30 Casks
Flesh, Meal

all what had
d Vessel as
a, the next
ons we had
of Men we
bisket, Meal
made Hasty
none of the
orn, part of
ing was di-
e much in-
t Monsieur
one, and he
n the Bark
ll serv'd.

Monsieur
Indians to
ent thither
e their Ad-
some Bales
of

of Normandy Blankets, and they saw several *Feb. 1685.*
Women had cut them in two and made Petticoats of them. They also saw Bits of Iron of the Ship that was cast away, and return'd immediately to make their Report to Monsieur de la Sale, who said we must endeavour to get some Canoes in Exchange, and resolv'd to send thither again the next Day. Monsieur du Hamel, Ensign to Monfr. de Beaujeu, offer'd to go up in his Boat, which Monsieur de la Sale agreed to, and order'd Messieurs Moranget, his Nephew, Desloges, Oris, Gayen, and some others to bear him Company.

No sooner were those Gentlemen, who were more Hot than Wise, landed, but they went up to the Camp of the *Indians*, with their Arms in their Hands, as if they had intended to force them, whereupon several of those People fled. Going into the Cottages, they found others, to whom Monsieur du Hamel endeavour'd to signify by Signs, that he would have the Blankets they had found restor'd; but the Misfortune was, that none of them understood one another. The *Indians* thought it their best Way to withdraw, leaving behind them some Blankets and Skins of Beasts, which those Gentlemen took away, and finding some Canoes in their Return they seiz'd two, and got in, to bring them away.

But having no Oars, none of them knowing how to manage those Canoes, and having only some pitiful Poles, which they could not tell the right Use of, and the Wind being also against them, they made little Way; which the *Sieur du Hamel*, who was in his Boat perceiving, and that Night drew on, he made the best of his

*Indiscre-
tion of an
Ensign.*

March
1685.

his Way, forsook them and return'd to the Camp.



The Indi-
ans take
Revenge.

Thus Night came upon them, which oblig'd those unexperienc'd Canoe Men, being thoroughly tir'd, to go ashore to take some Rest, and the Weather being cold, they lighted a Fire, about which they laid them down and fell asleep; the Sentinel they had appointed doing the same. The *Indians* returning to their Camp, and perceiving our Men had carry'd away two Canoes, some Skins and Blankets, took it for a Declaration of a War, resolv'd to be reveng'd, and discovering an unusual Fire, presently concluded that our Men had halted there. A considerable Number of them repair'd to the Place, without making the least Noise, found our careless People fast asleep, wrap'd up in their Blankets, and shot a full Volley of their Arrows upon them all together on a Sudden, having first given their usual Shout before they fall on.

Sieurs
Oris and
Desloges
kill'd.

The Sieur *Moranget* awaking with the Noise, and finding himself wounded, started up and fir'd his Piece successfully enough, some others did the like, whereupon the Natives fled: The Sieur *Moranget* came to give us the Alarm, though he was shot through one of his Arms, below the Shoulder, and had another slanting Wound on the Breast. Monsieur de la Sale immediately sent some arm'd Men to the Place, who could not find the *Indians*, but when Day appear'd, they found the Sieurs *Oris* and *Desloges* dead upon the Spot, the Sieur *Gayen* much hurt, and the rest all safe and sound.

This

March
1685
 

This Disaster, which happen'd the Night of the 5th of *March*, very much afflicted Monsieur *de la Sale*; but he chiefly lamented Monsieur *Desloges* a sprightly Youth, who serv'd well; but in short, it was their own Fault, and contrary to the Charge given them, which was to be watchful and upon their Guard. We were under Apprehensions for Messieurs *Moranges* and *Gayen*, lest the Arrows should be poison'd. It afterwards appear'd they were not, however Monsieur *Moranges*'s Cure prov'd difficult, because some small Vessel was cut.

The Consequences of this Misfortune, together with the Concern, most of the best Persons who had follow'd Monsieur *de la Sale* were under, supported the Design of those who were for returning to *France* and forsaking him, of which Number were Monsieur *Dairmaville*, a Priest of the Seminary of *St. Sulpice*, the Sieur *Minet*, Engineer and some others. The common Discourses of Monsieur *de la Sale*'s Enemies tending to discredit his Conduct, and to represent the pretended Rashness of his Enterprize, contributed considerably towards the Desertion; but his Resolution prevailing, he heard and waited all Events vvith Patience, and alvvays gave his Orders, vvithout appearing the least discompos'd.

He caus'd the Dead to be brought to our Camp, and bury'd them Honourably, the Cannon supplying the Want of Bells, and then consider'd of making some safer Settlement. He caus'd all that had been sav'd from the Shipvvreck, to be brought together into one Place, threvv up Intrenchments about it, to secure his Effects, and perceiving that the Water

This

March
1685.



Debates
between
the Com-
manders.

Water of the River, where we were, rould'd down violently into the Sea, he fancy'd that might be one of the Branches of the *Mississipi*, and propos'd to go up it, to see whether he could find any Tokens of it, or of the Marks he had left, when he went down by Land to the Mouth of it.

In the mean Time, Monsieur de Beaujeu was preparing to depart: The Chevalier de Aire had many Conferences with Monsieur de la Sale about several things, the latter demanded of Monsieur de Beaujeu, particularly the Cannon and Ball which were aboard the *Joly*, and had been design'd for him; which Monsieur de Beaujeu refus'd, alledging that all those things lay at the Bottom of the Hold, and that he could not rummage it without evident Danger of perishing; tho', at the same time, he knew we had Eight Pieces of Cannon and not one Bullet.

Mr. de la
Sale much
wrong'd.

I know not how that Affair was decided between them; but am sure he suffer'd the Captain of the Fly-boat *l'Aimable* to embark aboard Monsieur de Beaujeu, tho' he deserv'd to be most severely punish'd, had Justice been done him. His Crew follow'd him, contrary to what Monsieur de Beaujeu had promis'd, that he would not receive a Man of them. All that Monsieur de la Sale could do, tho' so much wrong'd, was to write to *France*, to Monsieur de Saignelay, Minister of State, whom he acquainted with all the Particulars, as I was inform'd, when I return'd, and he gave the Packet to Monsieur de Beaujeu, who sail'd away for *France*.

Mr. de
Beaujeu
leaves him

Having lost the Notes I took at that time, and being forc'd to rely much upon Memory for what I now write, I shall not pretend to be

any

inf

any l
mistal
as to
ture,
1685.

Wh
to W
Ship t
of Tim
Time.
Monf
a Fren
ver m
their
timely
broug
Death
Years

Wh
de la
up the
ther i
cordin
which
ther,
Recol
set ou
fary P
bout
de la
ders
tives,

W
an O
to us
Fort,

Voyage

ere, rould
ncy'd that
e Mississipi,
whether he
the Marks
y Land to

aujeu was
r de Aire
r de la Sale
anded of
e Cannon
, and had
onsieur de
ose things
at he could
Danger of
e knew we
one Bullet.
ecided be-
the Cap-
rk aboard
to be most
done him.
hat Mon-
he would
hat Mon-
wrong'd,
Saignelay,
d with all
hen I re-
Monsieur

at time,
Memory
nd to be
any

any longer exact in the Dates, for fear of *Mar. 1685*
mistaking, and therefore I cannot be positive
as to the Day of Monsieur de Beaujeu's Departure, but believe it was the 14th of March, 1685.

When Monsr. de Beaujeu vvas gone, we fell to Work to make a Fort, of the Wreck of the Ship that had been cast away, and many Pieces of Timber the Sea threw up; and during that Time, several Men deserted, which added to Monsieur de la Sale's Affliction. A Spaniard and a French Man stole away and fled, and were never more heard of. Four or five others follow'd their Example, but Monsieur de la Sale having timely Notice, sent after them, and they were brought back. One of them was condemn'd to Death, and the others to serve the King ten Years in that Country.

When our Fort was well advanc'd, Monsr. de la Sale resolv'd to clear his Doubts, and to go up the River, where we were, to know whether it was not an Arm of the Mississipi, and accordingly order'd fifty Men to attend him, of which Number were Monsr. Cavalier, his Brother, and Monsr. Chedeville, both Priests, two Recolet Fryars, and several Voluntiers, who set out in five Canoes we had, with the necessary Provisions. There remain'd in the Fort about an hundred and thirty Persons, and Monsr. de la Sale gave me the Command of it, with Orders not to have any Commerce with the Natives, but to fire at them if they appear'd.

Whilst Monsr. de la Sale was absent, I caus'd an Oven to be built, vvhich vvas a great Help to us, and employ'd my self in finishing the Fort, and putting it in a Posture to vvith-

stand

A Fort
built.

Monsr. de
la Sale
goes to dis-
cover up
the River.

Mar. 1685

stand the *Indians*, who came frequently in the Night to range about us, howling like Wolves and Dogs; but two or three Musquet Shots put them to Flight. It happen'd one Night, that having fir'd six or seven Shot, Monsieur de la Sale, vvho vvvas not far from us, heard them, and being in Pain about it, he return'd with six or seven Men, and found all Things in a good Posture.

Sets out a gain.

He told us he had found a good Country, fit to sow and plant all Sorts of Grain, abounding in Beeves and wild Fowl; that he design'd to erect a Fort farther up the River, and accordingly he left me Orders to square out as much Timber as I could get, the Sea casting up much upon the Shore. He had given the same Orders to the Men he had left on the Spot, seven or eight of whom, detach'd from the rest, being busy at that Work, and seeing a Number of the Natives, fled, and unadvisedly left their Tools behind them. Monsieur de la Sale returning thither, found a Paper made fast to a Reed, vvwhich gave him Notice of that Accident, vvwhich he was concern'd at, because of the Tools, not so much for the Value of the Loss, as because it was furnishing the Natives with such Things as they might afterwards make Use of against us.

A Spanish Vessel appears.

About the Beginning of *April*, we were alarm'd by a Vessel which appear'd at Sea, near enough to discern the Sails, and we supposed they might be *Spaniards*, who had heard of our Coming and were ranging the Coast to find us out. That made us stand upon our Guard, to keep within the Fort, and see that our Arms were

int

were f
Men i
uss, w
that M
Hav
work'd
ceiving
from P
brough
Fish,
Gilt-H
as a H
several
be ofte
our Suk
Abol
Year, a
le Gros
to go
one, v
Shoes a
turning
tle Sna
Scale o
Serpent
vvvas o
after h
last, as
more u
Fishern
the Fi
and co
Our
little
Fort,
Fishes,

were fit for Service. We afterwards saw two *Apr. 8985*
Men in that Vessel, who instead of coming to
uss, went towards the other Point, and by
that Means pass'd on, without perceiving us.

Having one Day observ'd, that the Water
work'd and bubbled up, and afterwards per-
ceiving it was occasion'd by the Fish skipping *Plenty of*
from Place to Place, I caused a Net to be *Fish taken.*
brought, and we took a prodigious Quantity of
Fish, among which were many *Dorado's*, or
Gilt-Heads, Mulletts and others about as big
as a Herring, which afforded us good Food for
several Days. This Fishery, which I caused to
be often follow'd, was a great Help towards
our Subsistence.

About that Time, and on *Easter-day* that
Year, an unfortunate Accident befel Monsieur
le Gros. After Divine Service he took a Gun
to go kill Snipes about the Fort. He shot
one, vvhich fell into a Marsh, he took off his
Shoes and Stockings to fetch it out, and re-
turning, through Carelessness trod upon a Rat-
tle Snake, so call'd, because it has a Sort of
Scale on the Tail, vvhich makes a Noise. The
Serpent bit him a little above the Ankle, he
vvvas carefully dress'd and look'd after, yet
after having endur'd very much, he dy'd at
last, as I shall mention in its Place. Another
more unlucky Accident befell us, one of our
Fishermen swimming about the Net to gather
the Fish, was carry'd away by the Current,
and could not be help'd by us.

Our Men sometimes went about several *May 1685*
little Salt Water Lakes, that were near our
Fort, and found on the Banks a Sort of flat
Fishes, like Turbots asleep, which they struck
with

Rattle
Snake
bites Mr.
le Gros,

May 1685
Salt found
in Pools.

with sharp pointed Sticks, and they were good Food. Providence also shew'd us that there was Salt made by the Sun, upon several little Salt Water Pools there were in divers Places, for having observ'd that there grew on them a Sort of white Substance, like the Cream upon Milk, I took Care every Day to send and fetch that Scum off, which prov'd to be a very white and good Salt, whereof I gather'd a Quantity, and it did us good Service.

Indians
come to the
Fort.

Some of our Hunters having seen a Parcel of wild Goats running as if they were frightened, judg'd they were pursued by the *Indians*, and came for Refuge to the Fort, and to give me Notice. Accordingly some Time after, we discover'd a Parcel of Natives, who came and posted themselves on an Eminence, within Cannon Shot, some of them drew off from the rest and approach'd the Fort by the Way of the Downs. I caused our Men immediately to handle their Arms, and wet Blankets to be laid on our Huts, to prevent their being burnt by the Fire the Savages sometimes shoot with their Arrows. All this Time those who had separated themselves from the rest, being three in Number, still drew nearer, making Signs for us to go to them; but Monsieur *de la Sale* had forbid me having any Commerce with them; however, since they had neither Bows nor Arrows, we made Signs to them to draw near, which they did without hesitating.

We went out to meet them, Monsieur *Moranget* made them sit down, and they gave us to understand by Signs, that their People were hunting near us; being able to make no more of what they said, Monsieur *Moranget* was for knocking

knock
havin
not co
in us.
they
we fi
Canno
Groun
Flight
The

since
Natio
prize
ed for
tincl;
withou
caution

Thu
the Be
Monfie
Settler
looking
ther up
to us t
and O
him, if
should
a good
the For
well M
with t
small N
be brow
so many
Our
on in th

were good
that there
eral little
ers Places,
on them
ream upon
and fetch
very white
a Quanti-

n a Parcel
e frightened,
dians, and
o give me
we disco-
and po-
thin Can-
m the rest
ay of the
diately to
ets to be
ing burnt
shoot with
who had
eing three
ing Signs
de la Sale
with them;
s nor Ar-
raw near,

seigneur Mo-
y gave us
ople were
no more
was for
knocking

knocking out their Brains, to revenge their having murder'd our Companions, but I would not consent to it, since they had come confiding in us. I made Signs to them to be gone, which they did as fast as they could, some small Shot we fir'd into the Air making them run, and a Cannon Shot, I pointed towards the rising Ground, where the rest were, put them all to Flight.

June 1685

These Accidents made us double our Guards, since we were at open War with that crafty Nation, which let slip no Opportunity to surprize us, and therefore Penalties were appointed for such as should be found asleep upon Sentinel; the Wooden-Horse was set up for them without Remission; and by Means of such Precautions we sav'd our Lives.

Thus we spent the rest of the Month, till the Beginning of June. In the mean Time, Monsieur de la Sale had begun to make another Settlement, in the Place he before told us of, looking upon it as better, because it was further up the Country. To that Purpose he sent to us the Sieur de Villoperdry with two Canoes and Orders for the Sieur Meranget to repair to him, if he were recover'd, and that all the Men should march, except 30 of the ablest to make a good Defence, who were to stay with me in the Fort. The rest being seventy Persons, as well Men and Women as Children, set out with the Sieur Meranget; and we being but a small Number remaining, I caused the Fort to be brought into a less Compass, to save posting so many Sentinels.

Second
Settlement

Our little Company began to take Satisfaction in the Ease of getting and the Nature of our
E Provisions

July 1685
A Conspiracy
discovered.

Provisions, which a greater Number has more Difficulty to be supply'd with, and which we had Plenty of, by Means of Hunting and Fishing, those being our principal Employments, and we liv'd well enough contented, expecting to be remov'd. However there were some Malecontents, who resolv'd to desert; but finding a Difficulty to put it in Execution, for that they could neither get Arms, nor Powder nor Ball, because the *Sieur le Gros* and I kept all lock'd up, and were very vigilant, that none might be lavishly spent, they took the cruel Resolution to rid themselves of us.

That bloody Massacre was to begin by me, when I was asleep, and then to proceed to the *Sieur le Gros*, who lay in the Magazine, or Warehouse, and was in no Condition to defend himself, because his Leg was still swollen, and put him to much Pain. The Execution was to be by stabbing. One of the Conspirators reveal'd this to the *Sieur Davault*, a Hunter, who immediately came and acquainted me. I did not just then take Notice of what I had been told; but in the Evening, when they return'd from hunting, I caus'd one to be secur'd, who presently confess'd all. His Accomplice was also seiz'd, and it was very troublesom to secure them till the Time when we should remove.

About the Middle of July, the Bark *la Belle* came and anchor'd near us. An Order was brought me from Monsieur de la Sale, directing me to put aboard it all the Effects that were in our Fort, to make a Float of the Timber I had caus'd to be squar'd, if Time would permit, if not to bury it in the Ground. Every Man set

his

Ind

his Ha
gence,
as was
with a

The
but th
holding
had be
bury th
that th

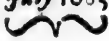
We
the Ind
de la Sa
found r
and so
any Acc
which
de la Sa
up. It
Barrels
the Eur

We
Canoes
went a
Compan
next Da
to make
Account
amaz'd
advanc'd
and Gra
through
There w
Sieur de
Number
ter but a

has more
which we
d Fishing,
ents, and
ing to be
Malecon-
finding a
that they
nor Ball,
all lock'd
e might be
Resolution

gin by me,
eed to the
azine, or
to defend
olen, and
ion was to
rarors re-
anter, who
me. I did
I had been
ey return'd
cur'd, who
nplice was
esom to se-
should re-

ark la Belle
Order was
, directing
at were in
mber I had
permit, if
y Man set
his

his Hand to the Work, with all possible Dili- *July 1685*
gence, and our two Prisoners were put aboard, 
as was also Monsieur le Gros and his Surgeon,
with all our Effects.

The Float was begun with immense Labour;
but the Weather proving very Stormy, and
holding very long, I was oblig'd to cause what
had been done to be taken in Pieces, and to
bury the Timber in the Sand, the best we could,
that the Natives might not find it.

We then set out towards the Place where
the *Indians* had been encamp'd, when Monsieur
de la Sale went the first time to see them. We
found no Creature, and lay there that Night.
and so proceeded along the Sea Coast, without
any Accident, to the Camp of the *Sieur Hurie*,
which was a Post in the Way, where Monsieur
de la Sale had order'd all our Effects to be laid
up. It had no other Inclosure but Chests and
Barrels; but there was nothing to fear from
the *Europeans*.

*The first
Fort aban-
don'd.*

We spent the Night at that Post, and two
Canoes coming thither the next Morning, I
went aboard one of them, with Part of my
Company, and join'd Monsieur *de la Sale* the
next Day, at the Place where he had resolv'd
to make his new Settlement. I gave him an
Account of all that had happen'd, and was
amaz'd to see Things so ill begun and so little
advanc'd. As for the Plantation, the Seed
and Grain put into the Ground, was either lost
through Drought, or eaten by Birds or Beasts.
There were several Dead, and among them the
Sieur de Villeperdry; many sick, and of that
Number Monsieur *Cavalier* the Priest; no Shel-
ter but a little square Place stak'd in, where the

*Ill Posture
of the 2d.
Settlement*

July 1685

~~~~~ Powder was and some Casks of Brandy; many other Inconveniences there were, which made all Things appear in a miserable Condition.

Hard Labour.

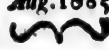
It was requisite to think of building a large Lodgment, Monsieur de la Sale design'd it, but the Difficulty was to get proper Timber for Building. There was a little Wood, where a good Quantity might be had, but it was a League up the Country, and we had neither Carts nor Horses to carry it; however Monfr. de la Sale sent Workmen thither, with others to guard them. The Trees were cut down and squar'd, but the Carpenters were so ignorant, that Monfr. de la Sale was forc'd to act the Master Builder, and to mark out the Pieces for the Work he design'd. Some of those Pieces of Timber were dragg'd to the Camp, over the Grass and Weeds the Plain was cover'd with; afterwards the Carriage of a Gun was made use of; but all cost so much Labour, that the ablest Men were quite spent.

Carpenter lost.

This excessive Toil, the poor Sustenance the labouring Men had, and that often retrench'd as a Penalty for having fail'd in doing their Duty; the Uneasiness Monsieur de la Sale was under to see nothing succeed as he had imagin'd, and which often made him insult the Men, when there was little Reason for it; All these things together afflicted very many so sensibly, that they visibly declin'd, and above thirty dy'd. The Loss of so many Men was follow'd by that of the Master Carpenter, who was returning one Evening with me; but I happening to step aside to kill some wild Fowl, when I came to our Habitation I found him not, and it was never known what became of him; an

Accident

in  
Acci  
he ha  
stood  
Ne  
enou  
to bu  
and  
out t  
and  
and c  
Pieces  
migh  
Canoe  
Bark  
Bein  
tives  
away  
were  
to poi  
a Floa  
of the  
again.  
we we  
wards  
fled.  
We  
was gl  
Canoe  
to the  
a migh  
and me  
Wood.  
Timber  
contigu  
Planks,  
Apart

Accident which added to our Vexation, for tho' <sup>Aug. 1685</sup> he had but little Skill at his Trade, yet we stood in Need of him: 

Notwithstanding all those Disappointments, enough Timber was carry'd or rather dragg'd, to build the House Monsieur *de la Sale* design'd, and he was himself the Architect. He mark'd out the Lengths, the Tenants and Mortises, and made good the Defect of the Workmen and calling to Mind that I had bury'd several Pieces of Timber at our first Habitation, which might be of Use, he order'd me to take two Canoes and 20 Men, to go fetch them, in the Bark *la Belle*, which was with us.

Being come to the Place, we found the Natives had discover'd our Timber, and carry'd away some Planks, to pick out the Nails there were in them, which they value very much, to point their Arrows. We labour'd to make a Float, loaded the Bark *la Belle* with the rest of the Planks and other Effects, and set out again. Some of the Natives appear'd whilst we were at Work, but seeing us advance towards them, with our Arms in our Hands, they fled.

We return'd safe to Monsieur *de la Sale*, who was glad to see us, tho' we had lost one of the Canoes, for want of its being well made fast to the Float; but the Timber we brought was a mighty Help towards carrying on his Design, and much fitter than that we had hew'd in the Wood, with so much Labour; so that this Timber occasion'd the raising another Structure contiguous to the former. All was cover'd with Planks, and Bullocks Hides over them. The Apartments were divided, and all of them well cover'd.

Second Settlement.

Sep. 1685



Mr. le  
Gros dies  
and others

cover'd. The Stores had a Place apart, and that Dwelling had the Name of St. Lewis given it, as well as the Neighbouring Bay.

The Sieur *le Gros*, who had remain'd aboard the Bark *le Belle*, ever since the first Voyage she made to our former Habitation, was carry'd ashore to the new One, and his Leg still swelling, the Surgeon was apprehensive of a Mortification, and advis'd him to consent to have it cut off. He did so, tho' with Regret, the Operation was made, but a Fever follow'd immediately, and he liv'd but two Days, dying on the Feast of the Decollation of St. John Baptist, much lamented by all Men, and particularly by Monsieur *de la Sale*, to whom he was very serviceable, by reason of his general Knowledge, and his particular Fidelity towards him. Monsieur *Carpentier*, Son to the Master of the Works and the Sieur *Thibault*, both of *Roan*, and some others, dy'd about the same time.

Monsieur *de la Sale* being desirous to take a Progress, to find his fatal *Mississipi* River, and only expecting the Recovery of his Brother Monsieur *Cavalier*, who was to bear him Company, he began to make some Preparations towards it, and in the mean time, took some small Journeys of four or five Leagues about, but could learn nothing further, than that it was a very fine Country, hem'd in on one Side by a small Mountain, which appear'd at about Fifteen or Twenty Leagues distance; beautify'd with very fine Trees, and water'd by many little Rivers, whereof that, on which we had Built our Habitation was the least.

River of  
Bullocks.

We call'd it *la Riviere aux Bœufs*, that is the River of Bullocks, by reason of the great Num-

ber

ber of them there was about it. These Bullocks are very like ours, there are Thousands of them, but instead of Hair they have a very long curl'd Sort of Wool.

Sep. 1685

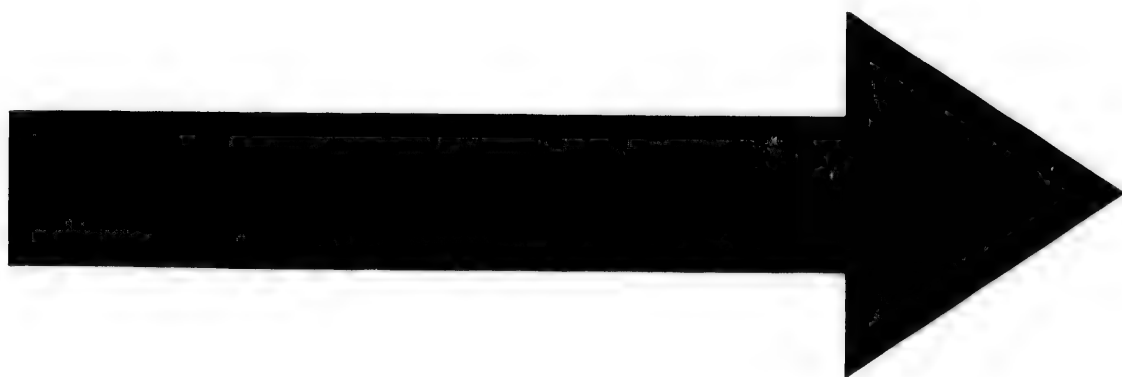
Monsieur *de la Sale* Studying all Ways to find out the River *Mississipi*, imagin'd it might fall into the adjacent Bay, and resolv'd to go view all the Coasts about it, and to make use of the Bark *la Belle*. Accordingly he order'd me to repair to the said Bark, with a Canoe, into which he put his Tools, and other Effects in several Chests.

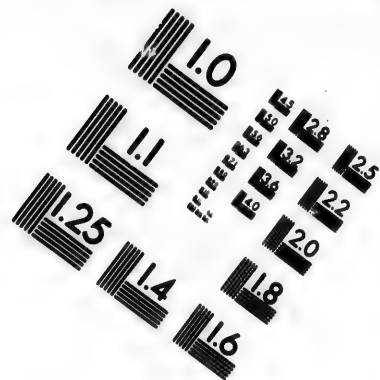
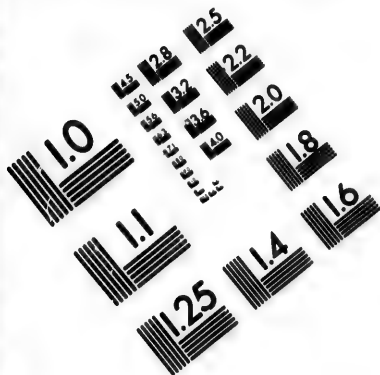
That short Voyage was very troublesome to us, by reason of the foul Weather, with contrary Winds and Storms, which had like to have overwhelm'd us, and what was still worse, we did not find the Bark, where we had left her. We went on a League further, to no Purpose, and Provisions beginning to fall short, because we had been six Days on the Way, instead of three, we resolv'd to return to the Place from whence we came.

Monsieur *de la Sale* seeing us return at a distance, came to meet us. Our Report troubled him for the Bark, which he stood in need of, so that he resolv'd to go himself to seek her, imbarck'd in a Canoe, and sent me another Way, in another. After having wander'd about all that Day, the next Night and the Day following, we at last perceiv'd her, where she lay under Shelter in a little Creek, having been in Danger of Perishing by the foul Weather we had been in, and had lost her Boat, which was not well made fast.

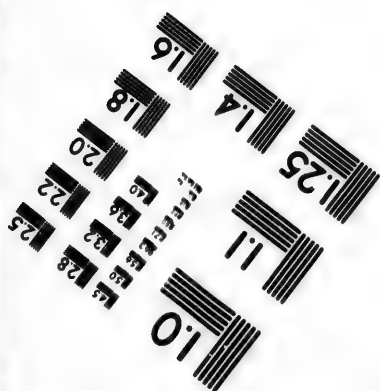
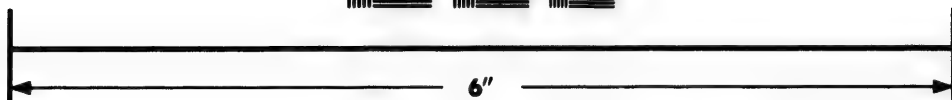
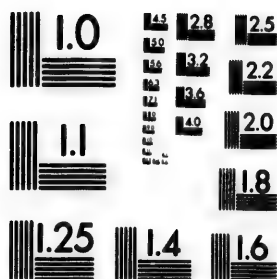
Boat of  
the Bark  
lost.







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18 20 22 25  
28 32 36 40

01  
11  
12

Oct. 1685



The Bark was also discover'd by Monsieur *de la Sale*, who was on the other side, which made him draw near and land, whence he sent his Canoe to the said Bark, and Monsieur *Moranget* who commanded it, went aboard to meet him. The Loss of the Boat troubled Monsieur *de la Sale*, I sent a Canoe to bring him, but to no Purpose; however the Trunks were put aboard the Bark.

What  
Stores they  
had.

Monsieur *Cavalier* the Priest, being recover'd, Monsieur *de la Sale* prepar'd to set out with all Speed. He was pleas'd to Honour me with the Command, during his Absence, and left me an Inventory of all that was in our Habitation, consisting of Eight Pieces of Cannon, two Hundred Firelocks, as many Cutlases, an Hundred Barrels of Powder, three Thousand Weight of Ball, about three Hundred Weight of other Lead, some Bars of Iron, twenty Packs of Iron to make Nails, some Iron Work and Tools, as Hatchets and the like.

As for Provisions, all that were left me amounted to twenty Casks of Meal, one Cask and a half of Wine, three Quarters of a Cask of Brandy, and for living Creatures some few Swine, a Cock and a Hen; which is very short of what has been Publish'd by the Author of a Book entitled, *The first Establishment in New France*: but the Reason of it is, that he compiled his Work upon the Credit of Relations, which were as false as to the Point of the Ammunition and Provisions, remaining in our Habitation, when Monsieur *de la Sale* set out that Time, as concerning the Fort well condition'd, and the Magazines or Storehouses under Ground, which are all imaginary, there being Nothing but the House

Monfieur  
e, which  
he sent  
Monfieur  
board to  
ed Mon-  
ing him,  
nks were

recover'd,  
with all  
with the  
ft me an  
bitation,  
on, two  
an Hun-  
d Weight  
of other  
ks of Iron  
Tools, as

the amoun-  
ask and a  
of Bran-  
Swine, a  
t of what  
Book en-  
rance: but  
his Work  
were as  
ition and  
on, vvh  
e, as con-  
and the  
nd, which  
g but the  
Houfe

House I have mention'd, pallifado'd, with some  
old Stakes.

Nov. 1684  


Monfr. *de la Sale* farther order'd me not to receive any Man of those he took along with him, unless they brought an Order from him in Writing; nor to hold or admit of any Communication with the Natives, but rather to fire upon them, and some other Particulars he thought fit to be observ'd. He had made himself a Coat of Mail with small Laths, to secure himself against the Arrows, which he took along with him, he also took the Canoes, and promis'd to send me one back. Five Cannon Shot were the Signal of his Departure.

He took his Way along the lower Part of the River, to march by Land along the neighbouring Bay, which was call'd of *St. Lewis*, the Canoes keeping within Sight. I was left in the Habitation with thirty four Persons, Men, Women and Children, and of that Number were three *Recolet* Friars, the *Sieur Hurie*, who was to command in my Absence, one of the *Sieurs Dubaut*, the *Sieurs Thibault* and a Surgeon.

*Monfr. de la Sale goes out to discover. St. Lewis's Bay.*

Our Provisions being very small, and it being requisite to spare them, for the Sick, we were oblig'd to apply our selves to Fishing and Shooting. Both of them at first prov'd very unsuccessful, especially the latter; because we were not yet well vers'd in them, and *Monfieur de la Sale* had taken our Huntsman along with him; but at length, Necessity made us more expert. We kill'd Beeves, some of which I caus'd to be dry'd, and they were a considerable Help to subsist us.

Some

Nov. 1685

Hunter  
dies with  
Cold.

Some Days after, the Canoe Monsieur *de la Sale* had promis'd me, arrived with three Soldiers, who brought us the News of the Loss of the Huntsman Monsieur *de la Sale* had taken along with him, and who had been found dead with Cold in a Ditch, where he had lain down to rest after hunting, which troubled us all very much. They also inform'd us, that Monsr. *de la Sale* advancing towards some Dwellings the Natives had abandon'd, after a small Resistance, some of whom had been wounded as they fled, they had taken and brought a Girl and a Woman, who was shot thro' the Thigh, of which she dy'd.

Dec. 1685

The Canoe was a great Help to us to carry what we kill'd, which being brought to our Habitation, found Employment for all Persons, some to flea, others to cut up, and others to dry it. At other Times, I set some of our Men to throw up a Trench about our Habitation.

Jan. 1686

Thus we spent our Time, till about the Middle of January, 1686, when being all, one Evening, in our Mansion, the Sentinel came in to acquaint me, that he heard a Voice towards the River; some Men ran thither immediately, and found a Man in a Canoe crying, *Dominick*, which was the Name of young *Dubaut*, who was with us. The Sight of that made me apprehensive lest some Disaster was befallen Monsr. *de la Sale*. I drew near, and perceiv'd it was *Dubaut* the Elder, that was return'd.

I ask'd, him whether he had any Letters from Monsieur *de la Sale*, he answer'd, he had not. It gave me some Uneasiness, considering I was forbid admitting any Man without an Or-



Order in Writing, and I was almost resolv'd to secure him ; but the Account he gave me of the Occasion of his returning wholly clear'd him. I admitted him, and he told me the whole Matter as follows.

Jan. 1686  
Duhaute  
returns  
from Mr.  
de la Sale.

Monfr. *de la Sale*, having staid some Time on the Sea Shore, near the Place where the Bark was at Anchor he resolv'd to try the Anchoring Places of the Coasts round about, to know how near the Bark *le Belle* might come. To that Purpose he sent the Pilot with 5 of the best Men to found.

The Pilot did as he was order'd, he sound'd and observed the proper Places to come near several Coasts. At Night he and his Men being in all likelihood tir'd, they thought fit to go Ashore and lie upon the Land. They made a Fire, perhaps to dress some Meat ; but neglecting to stand upon their Guard, they were surpriz'd, and all six of them kill'd by the Savages ; who also broke their Canoe, and thus reveng'd themselves for the Irruption Monfr. *de la Sale* had lately made among them.

Six Men  
killed by  
Natives.

More Time being elaps'd than Monsieur *de la Sale* had allotted those Men to return, he grew uneasy, and went himself along the Coast, to see if any News could be had of them, and keeping along the Shore, he found the sad Remains of those unfortunate Wretches, whose Carcasses scatter'd about, were torn and almost devour'd by Wolves or wild Dogs, a Spectacle which went to his Heart.

However this Loss, which afflicted him, and particularly for the Sake of the Pilot, who was an able Man, did not quite cast him down ; but exerting himself against his Misfortunes, he

caus'd

Jan. 1686

caus'd Flesh to be dry'd, and with that and the other Provisions he victuall'd the Bark *la Belle*. He caus'd it to advance into the Bay, put a good Number of Men on Board to secure it, among whom were Monsieur *Chedeville*, the Priest, and *Planterose* of *Roan*, and order'd them not to stir from that Place till they heard from him, and not to go Ashore, unless with a good Guard and necessary Precautions.

Next, he chose out Twenty Men, imbark'd on two Canoes he had left, and being come Ashore, caus'd the Canoes to be sunk in the River, and every Man to take up his Bundle, consisting of Arms, Tools, some Utensils for the Kitchin, a few Goods, to trade with the Natives, if he should find any sociable, and so advanc'd into the Country, to try if any Notice could be had of the *Mississipi*.

La Ma-  
ligne Ri-  
ver.

After several Days March, they came to a good pleasant River, which they afterwards call'd *la Maligne*. Monsieur *de la Sale* marching at the Head of the Company, and having order'd Monsieur *Moranget* to keep in the Rear; it happen'd that *Duhaut* stopping to mend his Snaplack and his Shoes, which were in a bad Condition; the Sieur *Moranget* coming up, commanded him to march, he desired him to stay a little. *Moranget* would not, but held on his Way; *Duhaut* follow'd some Time after, but having stay'd too long, he could not overtake the Company, and found himself about Night fall in a Plain full of Weeds, where there were several Tracks of the Way Cattle had gone, but knew not which of them to take. He fir'd his Piece several Times, without hear-  
ing

ing any thing of his Company, and was oblig'd Feb. 1686.  
to pass the Night in that same Place.

In the Morning he shot again, spent the Day and Night again in that Place, so that not knowing what to do, he return'd the same Way he had gone, and after a Month's March, for he travell'd only by Night, for Fear of meeting with the Savages, living upon what he kill'd with much Difficulty and Danger, having before spent all his own Provisions; at length after most unaccountable Hardships and Sufferings, he arriv'd at the Place where the Canoes had been sunk. He took one of them up, with incredible Labour, and too long to relate, and so came to our Habitation of St. Lewis. Thus it pleas'd God that he who was to be one of the Murderers of Monsieur de la Sale, should come off safe, and surmount almost infinite Dangers.

Strange  
Adventure

This Account, which seem'd to carry the Face of Probability, prevail'd with me to receive the Sieur Dubaut, and in Reality I could do no otherwise, and I made it my Business to examine into his Behaviour, but could find Nothing to lay to his Charge. We continued some Time longer as we had been before; during the which, I caus'd another little Wooden Structure to be made, of Timber, I had got together, and in it I lodg'd the Women and Maidens by themselves. Having hitherto said Nothing of the Situation of our Dwelling of St. Lewis, nor of the Nature of the Country we were in, I will here venture upon a plain but true Description.

We were in about the 27th Degree of North Latitude, two Leagues up the Country, near the

Feb. 1686.

*Description of the Country and Dwelling at St. Lewis. The Land.*

the Bay of St. Lewis and the Bank of the River *aux Baufs*, on a little Hillock, whence we discover'd vast and beautiful Plains, extending very far to the Westward, all level and full of Greens, which afford Pasture to an infinite Number of Beeves and other Creatures.

Turning from the West to the Southward, there appear'd other Plains adorn'd with several little Woods of several Sorts of Trees. Towards the South and East was the Bay, and the Plains that hem it in from the East; to the Northward, was the River running along by a little Hill, beyond which there were other large Plains, with some little Tufts of Wood at small Distances, terminating in a Border of Wood, which seem'd to us to be very high.

*Living Creatures.*

Between that little Hill and our Dwelling, was a Sort of Marsh, and in it Abundance of wild Fowl, as Curlews, Water-Hens and other Sorts. In the Marsh there were little Pools full of Fish. We had also an infinite Number of Beeves, wild Goats, Rabbits, Turkeys, Bustards, Geese, Swans, Feldisares, Plovers, Teal, Partridges and many other Sorts of Fowl fit to eat, and among them one call'd *le grand Gosier*, or, the great Gullet, because it has a very large one; another as big and Fleishy as a Pullet, which we called the *Spatula*, because it's Beak is shap'd like one, and the Feathers of it being of a pale Red, are very beautiful.

*Fish.*

As for Fish, we had several Sorts in the River and in the Lakes I have mention'd. The River afforded a Sort of Barbles, differing from ours ... Roundness, in their having three Bones sticking out, one on the Back, the others on each Side of the Head, and in the Flesh, which

is like Cod, and without Scales. The River supply'd us with Abundance of other Fishes, whose Names we know not. The Sea afforded us Oysters, Eeles, Trouts, a Sort of red Fishes and others whose long, sharp and hard Beak tore all our Nets.

Feb. 1686.



We had Plenty both of Land and Sea Tortoises, whose Eggs serv'd to season our Sauces. The Land Tortoises differ from those of the Sea, as being smaller, round, and their Shell more beautiful. They hide themselves in Holes they find or make in the Earth. It was looking for these Tortoises, that one of our Surgeons, thrust his Arm into a Hole, and was bit by some venomous Creature, which we suppos'd to be a Sort of Toad, having four Feet, the Top of his Back sharp and very hard, with a little Tail. Whether it was this Creature, or a Snake, his Arm swelled very much, however he was cured by such Applications as were made Use of; but it cost him a Finger was cut off.

Tortoises.

Venomous  
Creatures.

Among the venomous Sorts of Snakes, as Vipers, Asps and others, whereof there are many, those call'd Rattle-Snakes are the most common. They generally lye among the Brambles, where they make a Noise by the Motion of two Scales they have at the End of their Tail, which is heard at a considerable Distance, and therefore they are call'd Rattle-Snakes. Some of our Men had eaten of them and found their Flesh was not amiss, and when we had kill'd any of them, our Swine made a good Meal.

Rattle-  
Snakes.

There

Feb. 1686


  
Alligators.

There are also many Alligators in the Rivers; some of them of a frightful Magnitude and Bulk. I kill'd one that was between four and five Foot about, and twenty Foot in Length, on which our Swine feasted. This Creature has very short Legs, insomuch that it rather drags along than walks, and it is easy to follow the Tract of it, either among the Woods or on the Sands, where it has been. It is very ravenous, and attacks either Men or Beasts, when they are within Reach in the River, and comes also ashore to seek for Food. It has this particular Quality, that it flies from such as pursue, and pursues those who fly from it. I have shot many of them dead.

Trees.

The Woods are composed of Trees of several Sorts. There are Oaks, some of them ever green and never without Leaves; others like ours in *Europe*, bearing a Fruit much like our Galls, and lose their Leaves in Winter, and another Sort not unlike ours in *France*, but the Bark of them thicker, these as well as the second Sort bear an Acorn, differing from ours both in Taste and Bigness.

There is a Sort of Tree, which bears small Berries, which, when ripe, are red, and indifferent pleasant. It bears twice a Year, but the second Crop never ripens. There is another Tree, bearing a Fruit not unlike *Cassia*, in Taste and Virtue.

Dange-  
rons Figs.

There are others of the Sort I had seen in the Islands, whose Leaves are like Rackets, whence the Tree bears the Name. The Blossoms grow out about the Leaves, and of them comes a Fruit somewhat resembling Figs, but the Leaves and the Fruit are full of Prickles, which must be

be c  
eater  
and  
happ  
of th  
tion.

I h  
whos  
call'd  
differ  
Leave  
point  
This  
out F  
vwhiti  
of tha  
hanging  
and aft  
as a M  
full of  
Thing  
whereo

Ther  
and ot  
Tops  
fleshy  
cacy o  
of the  
berry  
their F  
delicieu  
and lar  
feeding

The  
Sorrel,  
the Tal



be carefully rubb'd and taken off, before it is eaten, else they dangerously inflame the Mouth and the Throat, and may prove mortal, as happen'd to one of our Soldiers, who had eaten of them too greedily, and without that Precaution.

Feb. 1685.



I have seen some Trees resembling the Palm, whose lofty and long Branches spread like that call'd the *Latanier*, bearing a Fruit, said to be in different good. Others the same Sort, but whose Leaves are like Gutters, harsh and so sharp pointed, that they will pierce the thickest Stuffs. This Tree has a Sprout on the Top, which shoots out Flowers in the Shape of a Nosegay, of a vvhitish yellow, and some of them at the Top of that Sprout have sixty or eighty Flowers hanging down, not unlike the Flower de Luce, and after those Flowers follows a Fruit as long as a Man's Finger, and thicker than the Thumb, full of little Seeds, so that there is scarce any Thing but the Rhind fit to eat, the Taste whereof is sweet and delicate

There are Abundance of creeping Vines Vines: and others, that run up the Bodies and to the Tops of Trees, which bear plenty of Grapes, fleshy and sharp, not to compare to the Delicacy of ours in *Europe*; but we made Verjuice of them, which was very good in Sauce. Mulberry Trees are numerous along the Rivers, their Fruit is smaller, but sweeter and more delicious than ours; their Leaves are beautiful and large, vvhich would be of good Use for feeding of Silkworms.

The Plains are strew'd with a Sort of small Plants: Sorrel, the Leaf whereof is like Trefoil, and the Taste of it sharp like ours. There are Abundance

F

bundance

Feb. 1686



bundance of small Onions, no bigger than the Top of a Man's Finger, but very well tasted, and when the Heat has scorch'd up the Plains, that Plant shoots out first, and produces Flowers, which look like an agreeable Enamel. Nothing is more beautiful than to behold those vast Plains, when the Blossoms appear; a thousand Sorts of different Colours, whereof many have an agreeable Scent, adorn those Fields, and afford a most charming Object to the Eye. I have observed some that smelt like a Tuberosc, but the Leaf resembles our Borage. I have seen Primroses, having a Scent like ours, *African* Gilliflowers, and a Sort of purple wind Flowers. The Autumn Flowers are almost all of them yellow, so that the Plains look all of that Colour.

The Climate is mild and temperate, tho' we were in about 27 Degrees of North Latitude, and yet the Seeds I caused to be sow'd did not thrive; whether it was because they had been soak'd in the Sea Water, or for any other Reason. Some came up pretty well, as Pumpions, Melons, Parsnips and Endive; but the Beasts and the Insects, left us not much. When we come to the *Conis* and have travर्स'd so many Nations as lay between us and them, I shall speak of the Religion, Manners, Cloathing, Houses and Customs of the Natives, wherein they differ but little from one another, tho' of several Countries.

Monsieur de la Sale had been now long gone, and we began to be in Pain for him, when about the Middle of *March* 1686, hapning to be on the Top of the House, I spied seven or eight Persons coming towards us. I presently order'd eight arm'd Men to follow me, to

go

than the  
ell tasted,  
he Plains,  
Flowers,  
Nothing  
nose vast  
thousand  
many have  
s, and af-  
e. I have  
rose, but  
have seen  
African  
d Flowers.  
all of them  
at Colour.  
e, tho' we  
Latitude,  
d did not  
y had been  
other Rea-  
Pompions,  
but the  
not much.  
e travers'd  
and them,  
rs, Cloath-  
ives, wher-  
other, tho'  
long gone,  
n, when a-  
pning to be  
ven or eight  
ently order-  
w me, to  
go

go meet them; and as soon as we drew near them, we knew Monsieur *de la Sale*, Monsieur *Cavelier*, his Brother, Monsieur *Moranger*, his Nephew and five or six Men with them, the rest being gone another Way to find out the Bark *la Belle*, to give Notice of Monsieur *de la Sale's* Arrival.

March  
1686.



They were in a bad Condition, their Cloaths ragged, Monsieur *Cavelier's* short Cassock hung in Tatters; most of them had not Hats, and their Linen was no better; however the Sight of Monsieur *de la Sale* rejoic'd us all. The Account he gave us of his Journey reviv'd our Hopes, tho' he had not found the fatal River, and we thought only of making ourselves as merry as we could. Only the Sight of the *Sieur Dubaut* interrupted it for some Time. Monsieur *de la Sale* ask'd me in an angry Manner, why I had receiv'd him, and *Dubaut* having given his Reasons, as I and my Men did, we were all satisfy'd.

Monsieur  
de la Sale  
returns.

The next Day, the *Sieurs le Barbier, Bihorel, le Petit, Cavelier*, the Nephew, the Surgeon and others, whom Monsieur *de la Sale* had sent to find out and carry Advice to the Bark *la Belle*, return'd, and said they could not find her, which was another fresh Cause of much Uneasiness to Monsieur *de la Sale*. He had been guilty of the Fault of putting aboard her, his Cloaths, his Linen, his Papers and all his best Effects, of all which he was then in the utmost Need. Besides, that Loss broke all the Measures he had concerted during his last Expedition, because he had resolv'd to cause the said Bark to go up one of the Rivers he had discover'd, to advance towards those Nations, with whom he had

The Bark  
la Belle  
lost.

March  
1686.



contracted some Friendship, and to send me in the same Bark, with his Nephew *Moranges*, to the Islands to seek for some Assistance, or else to return by Sea to look for his River.

All these Designs being disappointed, he resolv'd to set out a second Time, and travel by Land, to find out his River. He staid to rest him a while, and to provide for his Departure, but having neither Linen nor Cloaths, I supply'd him with some I had; I also afforded some Linen to Monsieur *Cavelier*, his Brother and Monsieur *Moranges*, his Nephew. All I had was at their Service, and I depriv'd myself of all that was fit for them, even to ten or twelve Pounds of Strings of Beads and some Knives and Nails, which Monsieur *de la Sale* took.

The *Sieur Dubaut*, having several Effects, as Linen, Hatchets and other Tools and Commodities, which had been sav'd from the Shipwreck, Monsieur *de la Sale* took Linen to make Shirts, for such as wanted, as also the Tools they stood in Need of. The Cloaths belonging to Messieurs *Thibault*, *le Gros* and *Carpentier*, who were dead, were also distributed. A great Belt I had, serv'd to make Shoes for Monsieur *de la Sale* and Monsieur *Cavelier*.

All Things being thus provided, Monsieur *de la Sale* took twenty Men along with him, among whom were Monsieur *Cavelier* his Brother, *F. Anastasius* a Realet, Monsieur *Moranges* his Nephew, the *Sieurs Bihorel*, *le Clerk*, *Hurrier*, *Dubaut* the younger, *Hiens* his Surgeon, and his Servants. He left behind those, who were not fit to undertake that second Journey, among whom were little Monsieur *Cavelier* his Nephew, the *Sieur Barbier*, *Canadien* and some others.

Monsieur  
de la Sale  
sets out  
upon ano-  
ther Expe-  
dition.

others. Each of the Travellers made up his Pack, and they set out towards the latter End of *April* 1686, after having given me the necessary Orders, and we parted without Ceremony, Monsieur *de la Sale* desiring it should be so.

Some Days after he was gone, I heard a Voice towards the lower Part of the River, crying twice *Qui vive*, or who are you for. I made that Way, and perceiv'd the *Sieur Chedeville* a Priest, the *Sieur de la Sablonniere*, and some others of those who had been put aboard the Bark *la Belle*, and were now in a Canoe. I ask'd abruptly what was become of the Bark, and was inform'd, our continual Misfortunes still pursuing us, that it had run aground on the other Side of the Bay. I caus'd the Canoe to be unloaded, there being in it, among other Things, Monsieur *de la Sale's* Cloaths, Part of his Papers, some Linen, a small Quantity of Beads and thirty or forty Pound of Meal, which was all they had left.

The next Day, Monsieur *de Chedeville* told me the Particulars of that Misfortune, and said, That having been some Time with the Bark, in the Place where Monsieur *de la Sale* had appointed them to wait, their Water falling short, they had thought fit to send the Boat ashore, with four or five Casks to fill; that the *Sieur Planterose* went in it with six of the best Men. That towards the Evening they saw the Boat coming back, but the Wind being contrary and Night coming on, they put out a Light, which going out and the Captain neglecting to put up another, in all Likelyhood the Boat could not see the Bark, and they never heard of it after,

*Apr. 1686*

*What was saved of the Bark la Belle.*

*How the Bark was lost.*

May 1586

nor of any of those in it, who it was probable had all perish'd.

That nevertheless, they continued some Days in the same Place, during which Time three or four of their Men died ; and at last, having no Water, they eat up their Swine, before they died with Thirst, and resolv'd to weigh Anchor and draw near to the Dwelling ; but having few Hands and those spent, and to add to their Misfortune the Wind proving contrary, they were drove to the other Side of the Bay, where they run aground.

That having no Boat, nor Men enough to land their Effects, they had endeavour'd to make a Float with some Casks and Planks, but that being ill made and join'd together, the first that went upon it had perish'd. That having made another Float better fastned together than the first, they had by that Means saved some Sails and Rigging, several inconsiderable Things, Linen, Cloaths and Papers belonging to Monsieur de la Sale and others, and then stay'd Ashore, expecting to hear some News, and had found a Canoe, being the same that was before lost on the Edge of the Bay, which had been drove to the other Side ; and that Provisions at last beginning to fall short, they went aboard the said Canoe and came to us ; fortunate in that they had not been discover'd by the Natives, during their Stay Ashore, which was for the Space of three Months, and in finding the Canoe to bring them back.

When Monsieur de la Sale went away, the Sieur Barbier had taken upon him to go a hunting, as also to provide Bark to cover our Houses, instead of Hides, because the Sun drying and

and  
Build  
to c  
Dwe  
me t  
not b  
two  
they  
The  
ment  
and  
vet.

Th  
ing h  
with  
had  
Men,  
him,  
Shot  
Canoe  
upwa  
him  
perce  
ver,  
them  
he w  
let  
Men  
them  
and  
Sou  
Bulloc  
by th  
be tru  
bitati  
the C



June 1686

and contracting them, Part of the Top of our Buildings was cover'd. I farther enjoyn'd him to cut Stakes, to make a Palisade about our Dwelling, and the *Sieur Chedeville* having told me they had bury'd several Things they could not bring away, I sent the *Sieur Barbier* with two Canoes and fifteen Men to the Place, where they found some Pedreroes, Rigging and Sails. The Natives having discover'd the Concealment, had taken away some Pieces of Linen and Iron Tools, which they very much coveted.

The *Sieur Barbier* after his Return, continuing his Exercise of hunting, happen'd to meet with a Parcel of the Natives, some of whom had Firelocks, which they had taken from our Men, and with which they made some Shots at him, but very weak; and he firing three or four Shot at them they retir'd. He was then in a Canoe on the River, and design'd to have gone upwards; but that Rancounter having oblig'd him to take another Way, and the Savages perceiving it, eight of them swam over the River, hastening to get before the Canoe, hid themselves among the Weeds, near the Way he was to pass, and when he was near enough, let fly their Arrows, which wounded several Men. One Shot the *Sieur Barbier* made, put them all to Flight again; he held on his Way and return'd to our Habitation.

Encounter  
with the  
Natives

Some Days after, we perceiv'd a Herd of Bullocks flying, and guess'd they were pursu'd by the Savages, which afterwards appear'd to be true. Some of them drew near to our Habitation, but a Cannon Shot, I pointed towards the Gang of them, and a Musket-shot Mon-

June 1686

 sieur Barbier fired at the nearest, made them all fly farther off.

The Sieur  
Barbier  
marries.

When the Sieur Barbier went out a Hunting, I commonly sent with him some Women and Maids, to help the Hunters to dress and dry the Flesh; but being inform'd that he us'd to slip aside from the Company, with a young Maid he had a Kindness for, and which gave Occasion to some well-grounded Railleries; the said Barbier being told I was acquainted with that Affair, came and spoke to me in private, desiring Leave to marry that young Woman, I made some Difficulty of it at first, advising him to stay till Monsieur de la Sale return'd; but at last, considering they might have anticipated upon Matrimony, I took the Advice of the Recolet Fathers, and of Monsieur Chedeville the Priest, and allowed them to marry. Monsieur le Marquis de la Sabloniere following this Example, ask'd the same Liberty, being in Love with a young Maid, which I absolutely refus'd, and forbid them seeing one another.

Accidents  
concerning  
the Recolets

Some Time pass'd in which Nothing happen'd to us worth observing; however, I will mention two Things which befell our Recolet Fathers. One was, That Father Anastasius, being a hunting Bullocks with me, and coming too near one I had shot, and was fallen, the Beast, as much hurt as he was, started up, attack'd and threw him down; he had much ado to get off, and I to rescue him, because I durst not shoot for Fear of killing him. The Bullock being weak, fell again; the Father was deliver'd, but lay ill some Months. The other was, That Father Maximus had writ some Memoirs

moirs concerning Monsieur *de la Sale's* Conduct, June 1686  
condemning him upon several Occasions. I was  
told of it, found Means to get those Memoirs,  
threw them into the Fire, and so the Father  
came off.

About the same Time, most of our Men  
seeing Monsieur *de la Sale* did not return, began  
to mutter. The Sieur *Duhaut*, who perhaps had  
been the first Fomenter of those Discontents,  
back'd the Complaints of the disgusted Party,  
promis'd them great Matters under his Con-  
duct, and offer'd to supply them with such Ef-  
fects as he had in Possession, endeavouring, as I  
suppose, by those Means, to gain their Affec-  
tions, for a mischievous Design, which it is likely  
he had even then conceiv'd.

*Duhaut*  
*Endea-*  
*vours to oc-*  
*casion a*  
*Mutiny.*

It was not long before, I had Intimation  
of the whole Affair, and I had done Monsieur  
*de la Sale* a singular Piece of Service, had I then  
put to Death the Person, who was to be his  
Murderer; but I rested satisfy'd with giving  
him a severe Reprimand, and threat'ning to  
cause him to be secur'd if he persisted, being able  
to do no other under my present Circumstan-  
ces. However, I talk'd to all concern'd, and  
put them in such Hopes of Monsieur *de la Sale's*  
Return, and that Things would soon change to  
their Satisfaction, that they were all paci-  
fy'd.

But in Regard, that Idleness often occasions  
Uneasiness and Impatience, I us'd all possible  
Means to keep them employ'd, in the most ob-  
liging Manner I could, setting some to cut  
down the Bushes about our Dwelling, others to  
hew down Trees, that hinder'd the Prospect, o-  
thers mow'd the Grass, that fresh might grow  
up

June 1686

M. de la  
Sale's Dis-  
coveries.

up for our Cattle, and at Night I made them divert themselves with Dancing and Singing.

Whilst we thus pass'd away the Time the best we could, Monsieur *de la Sale* had penetrated very far up into the Country, inclining towards the Northern Part of *Mexico*. He had travell'd through several Nations, the Inhabitants whereof were, for the most Part, sociable, and had concluded a Sort of Alliance with them, and particularly with the *Cenis* and others whose Names I shall mention. He had discover'd charming Countries abounding in all Things that could be wish'd, as well for Subsistence, as for making of easy Settlements, and after he and his Nephew *Moranget* had escap'd two Dangerous Sickneses, he return'd to our Habitation, with five Horses he had purchas'd, and arriv'd at it in *August* 1686.

His Return

Hearing of his Voice, I was one of the first that ran towards the River: We took our Canoes to bring him, his Luggage and some Provisions over, and the Horses swam. We were extraordinary glad to see our Commander in Chief return safe, tho' his Journey had not advanc'd his Design. Monsieur *de la Sale* had not found out his River, nor been towards the *Illinois* as we had hoped. Only eight Men return'd with him of twenty he carry'd out, and all the visible Advantage of that Journey consisted in five Horses, laden with Indian Wheat, Beans and some other Grain, which was put into the Store.

7 Men lost  
and 4 de-  
sert.

Monfr. *de la Sale* ask'd me, as soon as he came, whether the *Sieurs Clerc, Hurie, Dubaut* the younger and two others were come, because they

Sept. 1686

they not being able to endure the Fatigue of the Journey, he had given them Leave to return, and hearing they were not, he concluded the Savages had killed them. We were also inform'd, that the *Sieur Bihorel*, had stray'd and was lost, so that there had been no News of him since; that one of *Monfr. de la Sale's* Servants had been dragg'd down to the Bottom of the Water and devour'd by an Alligator, and that four others had deserted and abandoned *Monfr. de la Sale*, when he was about the Country of the *Cenis*.

This was a very dismal and deplorable Account; but the even Temper of our Chief made all Men easy, and he found, by his great Vivacity of Spirit, Expedients, which reviv'd the lowest Ebb of Hope. He rejoiced at the Return and Sight of *M. Chedeville*, he was pleas'd at the Recovering of his Cloaths and Part of his Papers; and after some Time of Rest, he propos'd to undertake a Journey towards the *Illinois*, and to make it the main Business, by the Way, to find the *Mississipi*; but it was thought proper to let the great Heats pass, before that Enterprize was taken in Hand.

In the mean Time, he gave Orders to stake about a Place to make a new Magazine, or Storehouse. He put to that Use the Timber I had caus'd to be cut, and would have more provided for the same Use. Detachments being sent to work, seven or eight of our Men, who were sent with the *Sieur Barbier*, were discover'd by the Savages, who being superior in Number, made as if they would hem them in; but each of our Men having taken a Tree upon their Shoulders and fir'd their Pieces, which

*M. de la Sale resolves upon a third Expedition.*

made

Oct. 1686.

Two Men  
kill'd.

made one of the Natives drop, the others took him up and withdrew. Yet it was not long before they were reveng'd, for they kill'd us two Men, one of them close by our Dwelling, and the other, who had separated from the rest of the Company to gather Purslain, and could not be reliev'd.

There being every Day some Discourse of the Journey to the *Illinois*, Monsieur de la Sale ask'd me one Day, whether I would make one of the Company, and go by the Way of *Canada* to *France* for Succours. I assured him I was entirely devoted to his Will, and would faithfully attend him. Then he began by Degrees to provide what he thought necessary for that Expedition. I had two Pair of Sheets, which he took, to make him Linen. Canvas Cloaths were made of the Sails of the Bark *la Belle*. The *Sieur Dubaut* having Linen, he took some to distribute among several Persons. Thus he hasten'd on the Execution of his Design, but an Accident put it off.

Nov. 1686

It was occasion'd by a Flux which troubled Monsieur de la Sale, who having told me he could not perform that Journey, as long as he continu'd in such Condition, I offer'd to undertake it for him, if he would allow me his *Indian*, and about fifteen Men; but he answer'd, That his Presence was requisite among the *Illinois*, and that it was requisite his Brother should go to *France*. Thus he refus'd my Offer, and could not shun the ill Fate of that Journey.

Dec. 1686

We spent some Time longer after this Manner, during the which, there arose a Controversy about the Privileges the King grants to the First-born of the *French Colonies* in *Ameri-*

ca.



64. The *Sieur Barbier's* Wife was with Child, and he claim'd the Privilege granted for that Child. The Widow *Talon* had a Child born in the Passage from *France* to *America*, and alledg'd, that her Child, tho' born before our Arrival, ought to be preferr'd; but the *Sieur Barbier's* Wife miscarrying, the Dispute was not decided.

Jan. 1687.  
Controversy about Privilege.

*Monsieur de la Sale* being recover'd of his Indisposition, Preparations were again made for his Journey; but we first kept the *Christmas* Holy-Days. The *Midnight Mass* was solemnly sung, and on *Twelve-Day*, we cry'd, *The King drinks*, (according to the Custom of *France*) tho' we had only Water: When that was over we began to think of setting out. *Monsieur de la Sale* gave the Command of the Settlement to the *Sieur Barbier*, directing him what he was to do and observe in his Absence.

There remain'd in that Habitation, the Fathers *Maximus* and *Zenobius*, *Recolets*, *Monsieur Chedeville*, the Priest, the *Marquis de la Sablonniere*, the *Sieur Barbier*, Commander, his Wife, a Surgeon and others, to the Number of twenty, among whom were seven Women, or Maids, and only the *Sieur Barbier* marry'd; which is much short of the Number some have given out remain'd in the Dwelling, without any Ground; for the Truth is, there were no more, and particularly no Natives, *Monsieur de la Sale* having absolutely forbid holding any Communication with them. As for Beasts, they amounted to seventy, or seventy five Swine, great and small, which was a good Stock; for Fowl, eighteen or twenty Hens; some Casks of Meal, which was

Who were left in the Settlement when *M. de la Sale* departed.

Jan. 1687. *vvas* kept for the Sick; Powder, Ball, and eight Pieces of Cannon, without any Bullets.

Persons  
that set out  
with M<sup>r</sup>. de  
la Sale.

We set out the 12th of *January*, in the Year 1687, being seventeen in Number, viz. Monsieur de la Sale, Monsieur Cavalier, the Priest, his Brother, Father *Anastasio*, the Re-colet, Messieurs *Moranget* and *Cavalier*, Nephews to Monsieur de la Sale, the Sieurs *Dubaur*, the Elder, *l'Archeveque*, *Eliens*, *Liotot*, Surgeon, young *Talon*, an *Indian*, and a Footman belonging to Monsieur de la Sale, &c. We carried along with us Part of the best Things every Man had, and what *vvas* thought would be of Use, wherewith the five Horses were loaded, and we took our Leaves with so much Tendernefs and Sorrow, as if we had all presaged, that we should never see each other more. Father *Zenobius* *vvas* the Person who express'd it to me most significantly, saying, He had never been so sensibly touch'd at parting with any Body.

The Way  
they tra-  
vell'd.

We went that Day to the Place we call'd *le Roucon*, because there, we had often dry'd Flesh, (which the French call *Boucanner* from the Indian Word) This Place was not far from our Habitation. The 13th, we cross'd a Plain, about two Leagues over, where we saw several Herds of Beeves and Flocks of Goats, Turkeys, Bustards, and other Sorts of Wild Fowl. We met with Marshy Lands, which tired our Horses, and came to a Wood that terminates the Plain, across which, runs a Branch of a River, full of Reeds, by Monsieur de la Sale call'd the *Princess's River*. That Branch joins the other, and they both fell together into the Bay of St. Lewis.

We

Jan. 1687

We kill'd five Beeves at the Entrance into the Wood, forded the River, and incamp'd Half a League beyond it, whence Monsieur de la Sale sent Men vvith the Horses, to bring the Flesh of the Bullocks vve had kill'd; the Hides of them, which serv'd to cover us, being very useful against a violent Shower of Rain that fell.

The 14th, the Rain ceasing, we travell'd over another spacious Plain, vvhere there is a Multitude of Beeves and Wild Fowl. We saw several Tracks, leading every Way, made by the Bullocks, of which we saw several Herds, some moving on hastily, and others running out-right, which made us suppose they were drove by the Natives. In short, having halted to help up one of our Horses that was fallen, we saw an *Indian* following them very close. Monsieur de la Sale caus'd a Horse to be immediately unloaded, which a Man mounting, rode after, overtook and brought the *Indian*.

When the Savage saw himself among us, he concluded he was a lost Man, he quak'd for Fear, and not without Reason, for most of our Men had resolv'd to kill him; Monsieur de la Sale oppos'd it, alledging, that vve vv ere but a small Number, that very few were left behind at the Habitation, and therefore vve ought not to render our selves odious to the Natives, but to use them kindly, that we might have Peace; an infallible Maxim, the Practice of which might have been fortunate to him, had he follow'd it sooner.

He

We

Jan. 1687

He therefore caus'd a Fire to be made, gave him to Eat and Smoke, and afterwards a Bit of Roll-Tabacco, and some other Trifles. Monsieur de la Sale gave him to understand, that he came not to hurt any Man, but to settle Peace in all Places, and so dismiss'd him. The *Indian* recover'd himself a little of his Fright; but being still dubious, what his Fate might be, he at first walk'd away gently, still looking about him, and when at a good Distance, made off as fast as he could. We held on our Way, and soon after saw another *Indian* running after the Bullocks. Monsieur de la Sale caus'd him to be taken, brought to us, and treated as the first had been.

We had not gone far before we spy'd a Company of Natives coming towards us, on our left, but we held on our Way, till they were over against us,, when Monsieur de la Sale caus'd us to halt. The Savages seeing us halt, stood still also, which Monsieur de la Sale perceiving, he laid his Firelock on the Ground, and advanc'd towards them, making Signs to him that Com-manded them, who was a handsome Man, to draw near. That *Indian* came forward, and was follow'd by the rest, all of them Caref-sing us after their Manner, which we return'd the best we were able, and then made them Smoak.

Natives  
certain'd

Next Monsieur de la Sale gave them to un-derstand, that we were going towards the *Conis*, that we desir'd to be at Peace with them all, and that we would return to our own Country, whence we would bring them all they had Oc-casion for. Then we distributed among them some Bits of Roll-Tabacco, some Strings of  
Beads

Bea  
plea  
Th  
We  
a V  
cam  
cut  
ther  
Be  
cove  
ward  
givin  
caus'  
stand  
priz'  
fy'd  
we di  
and t  
enter  
Signs  
Night  
took  
kept a  
Distur  
The  
find ou  
vwhere  
but m  
vve v  
crossin  
Wood  
Young  
ing as  
River  
ous sh

Beads and Knives, which they seem'd to be pleas'd with, and all this was done by Signs. Then every Man went his own Way: We advanc'd half a League farther, to get into a Wood, where Monsieur *de la Sale* had encamp'd when he went that Way before; we cut down Trees to secure our Post, and lay there that Night.

Before our Intrenchment was finish'd, we discover'd, first one *Indian*, then two, and afterwards three, coming one after another; which giving Monsieur *de la Sale* some Jealousy, he caus'd us to handle our Arms, with Orders to stand upon our Guard, for fear of being surpriz'd, and went towards them. They signify'd to him, that their People had told them, we did not hurt any Body, which was very well, and that they were come to see us. They were entertain'd as the others had been, and then Signs were made them to withdraw, because Night drew on, and having observ'd, that they took Notice of our fortifying our selves, vve kept a good Guard all the Night, vvithout any Disturbance.

The Fifteenth, vve march'd on, intending to find out a Ford, in the River call'd of the *Princess*, vvhere Monsieur *de la Sale* had pass'd before; but missing of it, and the River being swollen, vve vvere oblig'd to go up higher, sometimes crossing curious Meadows, and sometimes Woods of tall Trees of several Sorts, but all Young of the same Thickness and strait, looking as if they had been planted by a Line. The River running through the midst of those curious shady Groves, which were also water'd by several

A fine  
Country.

Jan. 1687



Thick  
Woods.

several little Brooks of very clear and good Water, afforded a most delightful Landskip.

We also met with some Woods so thick, that that it was requisite to hew a Passage for the Horses. Towards the Evening we kill'd a Bullock, and went to incamp in a little Coppice, with our usual Precautions.

Wild Fowl.

The 16th, we continued our Journey, still following the River upwards, and from Time to Time meeting the same Sort of Pasture Grounds and the Obstacles of Woods, where we were fain to cut our Way through, which fatigued us very much; but the Plenty of wild Fowl, and particularly of Turkeys, whereof we killed many, was an Ease to our Sufferings, and Help to bear our Toil with more Satisfaction.

An Indian  
Village a-  
bandon'd.

The 17th, was a very toilsome Day's Journey, by Reason of the Woods and Rivulets we were to cross; after which we came to a little Hill, on which there were 2 or 300 Cottages of the Natives. Those Huts were like large Ovens, consisting of long Poles stuck in the Earth in a Circle, and joyned above to make the Dome or round Top. They had been a Dwelling of the Natives, who being gone, had carry'd away the Hides that cover'd them, and the Mats which are us'd to hang the Insides, and to make their Beds of.

After a March of some Hours, our *Indian* having found a Herd of Beeves, we kill'd seven or eight, took the best of the Meat, and held on our Way across a Wood. We forded a Branch of the River, and proceeded to the Bank of another, the the Bottom whereof being foul, we incamp'd on the Edge of it, and the Rain falling

at



at Night and continuing all the next Day, were oblig'd to stay there. Jan. 1687

The 19th, the Rain ceasing, we proceeded through a thick Fog, and over Places where the Water was often up to our Knees, and sometimes higher; vvhich, together with our being forc'd to cut the Way athwart the Bushes, vvith our Hatchets, gave us inexpressible Trouble, and it had been much greater, had vve not resolv'd to follow the Ways beaten by the Bullocks, vvhom a natural Instinct alvvays leads to those Parts vvich are easiest to pass.

We were not free from another Inconveniency in those Tracks, which was their being full of Water and very rugged, a Thing no Way agreeable to our Shoes, which were no other than a Piece of Bullocks Hide or Goats Skin quite green, whereof we made a Sort of Buskins, to serve instead of Shoes, but when these wretched Boots were dry'd by the Heat, upon our Feet, they hurt us very much, and we were often oblig'd to set our Feet in the the Water, to soften those Buskins. However, we march'd all the Day, notwithstanding all those Inconveniencies, without finding a proper Place to incamp, and at last came to a River, whose high Bank afforded us a Spot to rest on.

*Buskins of  
raw Hides  
instead of  
Shoes.*

The 20th, a small Rain did not obstruct our March, and having cross'd a Wood, half a League athwart, and a Marsh of the same Extent, we came into a large Plain, cut across by great Tracks of Bullocks, which went towards the River, and made us suppose there might be a Ford. We follow'd that Way, but found the River so swollen, and its Stream so rapid, that it was impossible to cross it, but were oblig'd

Jan. 1687 blig'd to halt upon its Bank, whence we went to hunt Bullocks, whereof we had no Want, nor of Turkeys and other wild Fowl.

The 21th, we proceeded up that River, and found a narrow deep Place, near which we hew'd down a Tree, making it fall so as to reach from the one Bank to the other, in the Nature of a Plank, and handed our Baggage from one to another over it. The Horses swam over and we incamp'd on the other Side, near a very beautiful Plain.

Hebaha-  
mo, Indi-  
an Nation.

Whilst we were hewing down some little Wood to intrench ourselves, we heard a Voice, whereupon handling our Arms and going to the Place where we heard it, we saw a Company of fifteen Savages, who were coming towards us, and made Signs to us to go to them, laying down their Bows, in Token of Peace. We also made our Sign to them to draw near, they did so and caress'd us after their Manner. We made them sit down and smoke, after which, Monsr. de la Sale began to converse with them by Signs, and by Help of some Words of the Language of the *Cenis*, which he was skilful in, he understood, that these were their Neighbours and Allies; that their Village was not far off, and that their Nation was call'd *Hebahamo*. Some small Presents were given them and they withdrew, promising to return the next Day.

The 22th, our Horses being spent and hurt, and we much tir'd, the Day was given to Rest, and the Natives did not fail to come, being twenty five in Number, some of whom had Bucklers or Targets made of the strongest Part of the Bullocks Hides. They gave us to understand, that they were engag'd in War towards the *NW*.

and

an  
vv  
O  
wa  
  
La  
the  
sto  
us.  
Pla  
sho  
and  
A R  
did  
not  
tha  
mec  
Y  
cam  
man  
part  
row  
foun  
a lit  
beca  
verfi  
a lit  
Cloo  
next  
Wat  
Leag  
made  
W  
the P  
and a  
a ver  
Part

into NORTH AMERICA.

85

Jan. 1687

and told us, they had seen Men like us, vvho vvhere but ten Days Journey from that Place. Other Tokens they gave, made us suppose it was *New Spain* that they talk'd of.

Monfr. *de la Sale* took several Words of their Language, vvhich is very different from that of the *Cenis*, and more difficult. As for their Customs, they are much alike. Infine, having shewn us, that towards the *N.W.* we should meet with Plains, vvhere the Way would be easier, and we should shun the Woods, we gave them to eat, and some Presents, and they took Leave of us. A Rain falling and holding all the Night, we did not march the 24th. The 25th, we travell'd not far, by Reason of the Rains continuing, and that there were several Rivers in the Way much swollen.

The 16th, we proceeded on our Journey, and came to the River call'd *la Sabloniere*, from the many Sand Banks there are in it. The 27th, departing from it, we came to another little narrow River, but very deep; going up higher we found a Ford, and went to incamp beyond it, in a little Wood, where we had a very bad Night, because of the Rain which fell again, and the overflowing of the River, which oblig'd us to make a little Sort of Scaffold, to lay our Powder and Cloaths on, that they might not be wet. The next Day being the 28th, observing that the Water was still rising, we decamp'd to go a League farther, to a higher Ground, where we made a great Fire to warm and dry us.

We took Notice the Country was very good, the Plains extending as far as the Eye could reach, and adorn'd with many little Coppices, affording a very agreeable Prospect. We march'd over Part of them the 29th and 30th, after 3 Hours

G 3

Travel,

Feb. 1687



Village inhabited.

Travel, found a Way full of Water, which oblig'd us to incamp on the Bank of a River; pass'd it the 31th, and incamp'd in a Wood close by.

The next Day, being the First of February 1687, Monsieur de la Sale left me to guard the Camp, and took along with him, Monsieur Cavalier his Brother and seven Men, to go see whether he could find any Body in several Cottages our Hunters had discover'd. He found twenty four or twenty five of them, built round like those I have before mention'd, standing on a rising Ground, almost encompass'd by the River, in each of which there were four or five Men, and several Women and Children.

The Savages were somewhat surpriz'd at Monsieur de la Sale's coming; however they receiv'd him in friendly Manner, and conducted him to their Commander's Hut, which was immediately fill'd with People, who came to see him. The Elders came together there, Bullocks Hides were laid upon the Ground, on which they made Monsieur de la Sale and his Company sit. They gave them hung Beef to eat, and then signify'd to them that some of their Allies had given them Notice of our being in the Country, and that we were going to the *Cenis*, and they had imagin'd that we would pass thro' their Country.

Monsieur de la Sale presented them with some Knives and Bits of Tabacco, and they gave him Bullocks Hides, very well dress'd with the Hair, they gave one for a Knife, and would have given many more, but that we told to them, that we had no Conveniency to carry them and that if they had any Horses, he would give them Axes in Exchange. They answer'd, they had but two, which they could not part with.

It  
we  
In  
ion  
whi  
T  
som  
we  
mad  
Nat  
whe  
kill.  
Hor  
serv  
W  
Coun  
ing c  
a fine  
vous,  
Journ  
vants  
is as  
navig  
bout  
ing to  
Ou  
keys  
rest  
very  
Thro  
feed u  
their  
Ha  
Mon  
hid  
Trunk  
Eight

It being late when Monsieur *de la Sale* return'd, Feb. 1687  
 we staid there the rest of the Day, and several  
*Indians* came to see us, in Hopes of receiving  
 some Present, offering us Bullocks Hides dressed,  
 which we would not burden our selves with.

The Second, we set out again, and halted  
 some Time in that Village, where by the Way  
 we barter'd for some Collars, or a Sort of Knots  
 made of Bullocks Hides well dress'd, which the  
 Natives make Use of to carry their Burdens,  
 whether of Wood, Utensils, or the Meat they  
 kill. They prov'd of Use both to us and our  
 Horses, because the Thongs of those Collars  
 serv'd to make fast our Burdens.

We proceeded on our Journey, through a  
 Country pleasant enough, but Sandy, and hav-  
 ing cross'd a large Plain, came to the Bank of  
 a fine River, call'd *la Maligne*, or the Mischie-  
 vous, because in Monsieur *de la Sale's* former  
 Journey, an Alligator devour'd one of his Ser-  
 vants, who was swimming over it. This River  
 is as wide as the *Seine* at *Roan*, seems to be very  
 navigable and has a very pleasant Country a-  
 bout it. We incamp'd in a little Wood adjoin-  
 ing to it, and bark'd the Aspen Trees to hut.

Our Hunters kill'd Beeves, wild Goats, Tur-  
 keys and other Wild-Fowl, and among the  
 rest some Creatures as big as an indifferent Cat,  
 very like a Rat, having a Bag under their  
 Throat, in which they carry their Young. They  
 feed upon Nuts and Acorns, are very fat, and  
 their Flesh is much like Pig.

Hard by there, we found a Place where  
 Monsieur *de la Sale*, in his former Journey had  
 hid some Parcels of Strings of Beads in the  
 Trunks of Trees, and we rested there till the  
 Eighth of the Month. During that Time, no

Feb. 1687

Day pass'd without seeing some of the Natives, who sometimes spent the whole Day with us, and said they were of several Nations. We made them smoke, and always gave them some small Presents. They admir'd that after we had writ down some Words they spoke to us, we repeated them, looking on the Paper.

*Portable  
Canoe.*

Whilst we staid, Monsieur *de la Sale* set Men at Work to make a portable Canoe, of long Poles, hew'd and joyn'd and then cover'd with Bullocks Hides sew'd together, having pull'd off the Hair or Wooll, as it may be call'd there. That Canoe was of great Use to us, to cross Rivers as well for our selves as for our Baggage, but the Horses swam over.

The Ninth, we put our Canoe into the Water, and pass'd the River in it, and incamp'd half a League from thence, on Account of the Grass, which our Horses stood in Need of to recover themselves a little. The Tenth, we held on our Journey, crossing several spacious Plains, the Grass whereof was burnt, whence Monsieur *de la Sale* concluded, that there were many Natives thereabouts. He thought it convenient to provide Store of dry'd Flesh, for Fear we should not find Game in the Country we were going to enter upon, and accordingly caused several Beeves to be kill'd for that Purpose.

For that Reason, we continued there till the 12th, when we went and incamped on the Bank of a River, which Monsieur *de la Sale* had in his former Journey call'd *d'Eure*. At Night there arose a Storm, follow'd by Thunder and Rain, which swell'd the Streams, and obliged us to stay there. The 13th and 14th we cross'd four or five large Rivulets, and then a fine

curious



curious Country, diversify'd with several little Woods, Hills and small Brooks, affording a delightful Prospect. That pleasant Country was terminated by a Wood, which we were to cross, and were favour'd in it by a Way beaten by the Bullocks, and at Night we incamped there. Feb. 1687.

The 15th, we travel'd along a fine Meadow, then over Plains that had been burnt, and at Night went to take our Rest on the Bank of a small Rivulet, about which we saw several Foot-steps of Natives, which made us conclude we were not far from them; and therefore we doubled our Guard, to prevent being surpriz'd.

The 16th, Monsieur *de la Sale* left me at the Guard of the Camp, and took Monsieur *Cavelier* his Brother, and seven Men with him, to go find out the *Indians*. They had not gone half a League before they spied Horses and a Number of Cottages, without being themselves seen by the Savages. That Village stood on the Side of a Hill, and contain'd about forty Huts, standing together, besides several others straggling.

*A Village.*

When Monsieur *de la Sale* enter'd the Village, the Savages seeing him, came to meet and conduct him to the Cottage of their Chief, where he and his Company were seated on Bullocks Hides. The Elders being come, he signify'd to them the Occasion of his Coming, as he had done to the other Nations, with which they seem'd to rest satisfy'd. Some Presents were made them, according to Custom, and they offer'd him a Quantity of Hides, which he refus'd, telling them, that when he return'd from the *Cenis* he would trade with, and furnish them with all they had Occasion for. They confirm'd

*Monsieur de la Sale well receiv'd by the Natives.*

whac

Feb. 1687 what the others had told us, concerning a Nation, where some of them had been, the Men vvhereof were like us, meaning the *Spaniards*. He nam'd to them the Nations we had pass'd through from our Dwelling of St Lewis, to the River *Maligne*, which vve had lately pass'd. The Names of those Nations are as follows.

Names of Nations or Tribes. The *Spicheats*, *Kabeyes*, *Thecamons*, *Theauremets*, *Kiahoba*, *Choumenes*, *Kouans*, *Arhan*, *Enepiabe*, *Ahonerhopiheim*, *Korenkake*, *Korkone*, *Omeasse*, *Keremen*, *Ahehoen*, *Maghai*, *Thecamenes*, *Otenmarhem*, *Kavagan* and *Meracouman*. These are the Nations that lay on our Road ; those on the West and North West of the said River, were the *Kannehonan*, *Tehaka*, *Pehir*, *Coyabegux*, *Onapien*, *Pichar*, *Tohan*, *Kiaffes*, *Chanzes*, *Tsera*, *Bocrettes*, *Tsepehoen*, *Fercoutecha*, *Pango*, *Petao*, *Petzares*, *Peisacho*, *Peihoum* and *Orcampion*.

Those we were with then, were call'd *Teao*, whom we had not before hear'd nam'd. They talk'd of a great Nation call'd *Ayona* and *Canohasino*, who were at War with the *Spaniards*, from whom they stole Horses, and told us, that one hundred *Spaniards* were to have come to join the *Cenis*, to carry on that War, but that having heard of our March, they went back. Monsieur de la Sale gave them to understand, that vve vv ere at War vvith the *Spaniards*, and that we fear'd them not ; and that he was sent on their Account by the great Captain of the World, who had charg'd him to do them all Good, and to assist them in their Wars against such Nations as were their Enemies.

Those Savages gave Monsieur de la Sale Notice, that he would find three of our Men among the *Cenis*, which put him in Hopes they were

were  
form  
hear  
Hor  
vey'o  
them  
Mon  
us.

Th  
Diffic  
one o  
uprig  
with  
were  
den  
thus  
Wood  
dows.

Th  
those  
Diffic  
we m  
we v  
that  
locks  
one o  
vv ere  
Numb  
drew  
to pr  
them  
them  
being  
those

Wh  
tain Pe

were those he had given Leave to depart at his former Journey, and of whom he had never since heard. He propos'd to them to barter for Horses; but they had caus'd them to be convey'd out of the Way, for Fear we should take them away, excepting only one Bay, which Monsieur *de la Sale* agreed for and return'd to us.

Feb. 1687.



The 17th, we pass'd a small River, with some Difficulty, and incamp'd beyond it. The 18th, one of our Horses going along the Edge of an upright Bank, fell into the Water, and came off with only a Hurt on the Shoulder; but we were fain to unload him, and distribute his Burden among us, every one making a Pack; and thus we cross'd a curious Plain, diversify'd with Woods, Hills, Rivulets, and delightful Meadows.

The 19th, we travell'd along the Tops of those Hills, to avoid the Bottoms, and found a Difficulty to get down, by Reason of the Rocks we met wvith at the End of them, and a River we were to cross. Whilst we were passing that River, we heard Dogs hunting the Bullocks, two of vvhich coming near us, one of them was shot dead. The Natives who vvere hunting spying us, sent out two of their Number, who creeping from Tree to Tree, drew near, and then stood still, vwithout daring to proceed any farther. We made Signs to them to come, which they did, and we made them smoke, till Monsieur *de la Sale* return'd, being gone a little Way to observe the Body of those People.

When come, he told them, he would entertain Peace with them, that we were going to

the

Feb. 1687. the *Cenis*, and he believ'd, that these very Men were of their Nation, because they had their Accent and some of their Words. They told him their Village was near that Place, and bore us Company to our Camp, where after some small Presents given them, they were dismiss'd.

Account  
given by a  
Native.

The 20th, Monsieur de la Sale sent Monsieur *Meranget* and some others to the Village of those Natives, to try whether they could barter with them for some Horses. In the mean Time two Savages came to us, one of them being the same that was with us the Night before, and they express'd much Friendship for us. That particular *Indian* told us, his Name was *Palaguechaune*, that they were Allies to the *Cenis*, that their Chief had been among the *Choumans*, with the *Spaniards*; that the *Choumans* were Friends to the *Spaniards*, from whom they got Horses, and added some farther Particulars, which the others had before signify'd to us; so that we had good Reason to judge we were not far from *North Mexico*.

He also told us, that the *Choumans* had given their Chief some Presents, to perswade him to conduct us to them; that most of the said Nation had flat Heads; that they had *Indian* Corn, which gave Monsieur de la Sale Ground to believe, that those People were some of the same he had seen upon his first Discovery. That same Native had a very fine Goat's Skin, which I purchas'd of him for four Needles, after I had shewn him how to use them, and that Skin was of good Use to make us Shoes instead of raw Bullocks Hides.

Some

# into NORTH AMERICA.

91

Some Time after, Monsieur *Moranget* re-  
turn'd, gave Monsieur *de la Sale* an Account of  
his short Journey, and said, That one of the  
Natives, vvho savv us the Night before, came to  
meet and conduct him to the Chief's Cottage,  
where forty ancient *Indians* were, by vvhom  
he had been kindly receiv'd. That the Chief  
had in his Hand a Reed, at the End whereof  
was made fast a Leaf of a *French Book*, which  
he had an extraordinary Respect for. That  
they had been made to sit on *Bullocks Hides*,  
and treated with dry'd Beef.

Feb 1687:  
M. Mo-  
ranget's  
Account.

That after these first Ceremonies, the Chief  
had given them to understand, that some of  
their People had been conducted by a Man like  
us, to our Habitation, and that the said Man  
had promis'd to bring them to talk with us, in  
order to treat of Peace ; but that on the Con-  
trary, we had fired on them and kill'd one of  
their Men, which had oblig'd them to kill the  
Man that led them, and that then they re-  
turn'd. It is not improper here to put the Rea-  
der in Mind, that I have before mention'd this  
Accident, when the *Sieur Barbier* crossing the  
River in a Canoe, was call'd upon by some Per-  
son, who was among the Natives on the Bank  
of the River, vvho had made two Shots, as it  
had been only the Priming of a Piece, vvwhich  
the *Sieur Barbier* had look'd upon as an Insult,  
and therefore he had also fir'd, vvith all the o-  
ther Particulars, as mention'd before ; an Acci-  
dent that happen'd for vvant of understand-  
ing one another ; vvwhich, together with *Monfr.*  
*de la Sale's* forbidding us to have any Commu-  
nication with the Natives, vvvas very prejudi-  
cial to us afterwards.

After

Some

Feb. 1687



After much other Discourse, Monsieur *Moranges* having given them some small Presents, they made their Return in Bullocks Hides, and Goats Skins well dress'd. He ask'd them for some Horses to barter; they answer'd, they had no more than what they stood in Need of. We immediately proceeded on our Journey, and that Day being the 21st, went to incamp at the Edge of a Wood.

The 22d, we went up to an Eminence terminated by a Rock, at the Foot whereof ran a little River, the Bottom whereof was all of flat Rocks, fit for Building. Thence we descry'd two Natives driving of Bullocks, which made us stand upon our Guard, and it appear'd to be our *Indian*, who had met another, with whom he had been acquainted among the *Cenis*, and whom he had brought along with him.

Three lost  
French  
Men heard  
of.

Monsieur de la Sale was very glad to see him, and remember'd he was one of those of whom he had purchas'd a Horse. He ask'd several Questions of him, and among the rest, whether he had not seen the four Men who deserted in his former Journey, or heard any Talk of the others, to whom he had given Leave to return to our Dwelling. He answer'd, he had seen one among the *Cenis*, and two others among the *Affonis*; but that he had not heard of any more, and that they must needs be dead; as also the *Sieur Bihorel*, who was likewise mention'd to him.

He further told us, that there were four or five Cottages thereabouts, in which about Fifteen Men resided. At Night he went away. Our *Indian* had kill'd a Cow at a great Distance and shot her quite through, at which the other;

vwho



Monsieur Mo-  
 presents,  
 Hides, and  
 them for  
 l, they had  
 Need of.  
 ourney, and  
 camp at the

inence ter-  
 ereof ran a  
 s all of flat  
 e descri'd  
 hich made  
 ear'd to be  
 with whom  
 *Cenis*, and  
 m.

to see him,  
 e of whom  
 'd several  
 st, whether  
 deserted in  
 Talk of the  
 e to return  
 e had seen  
 ers among  
 ard of any  
 e dead; as  
 ewise men-

were four or  
 about Fif-  
 went away.  
 at Distance  
 the other;  
 vwho

who had been an Eye Witness to it, stood a long Time amaz'd, without speaking one Word, admiring the Effect of our Pieces. That Cow was sent for, and the Flesh brought to our Camp.

The 23d, we pass'd by the Cottages we had been told of, where the Natives were with their Wives and Children. Monsr. *de la Sale* caus'd us to halt in the Village. We were well receiv'd, they presented us with dry'd Beef, and we return'd it in some Knives. We saw two Horses, one of them a little grey, indifferent handsome. They told us they would soon depart that Place, to go join their Companions, who were in War with their Enemies. The rest of our Men being come up, we went on to incamp a League from thence, on the Bank of a Rivulet, and at the Foot of one of the highest Mountains in the Country.

Unloading our Horses, we perceiv'd there wanted a large Axe, which serv'd us for hewing down of Trees. Monsieur *de la Sale* sent his *Indian* to demand it, at the Village we came from last, the Savages said they had not seen it, and it was lost. He brought back Word, that the Savages had told him, that if we would stay for them, they would go along with, and shew us the Way.

However, we went on the 24th, and incamp'd on the Edge of a Marsh. The 25th, the Rain hinder'd us from Marching. The 26th, Monsieur *de la Sale* perceiving how difficult and dangerous it was to cross that Marsh, sent his *Indian* to the others, to know whether they really design'd to go with us. They answer'd, we must return thither to join them.

The

Feb. 1687

*Mar. 1687* The 27th. we decamp'd, in order to it; but took another Way to go meet the *Indians*. The 28th. we saw them marching at a Distance. One of them was detach'd to come tell us, that he would shew us the Way to cross the Marsh, and we went on and incamp'd at the Foot of the high Mountain I have spoken of.

The first of *March*, we join'd the *Indians*, on the Edge of the Marsh, which we had just cross'd, where the Rains kept us till the Fifth, during which Time we went to find out where we might pass a rapid Torrent, that discharges it self into the River call'd of *Canoes*, which we pass'd the 6th, in the Canoe we had made, and which did us good Service, to pass other Rivers we met with the 7th and the 8th on our Way.

*River of Canoes.* The 9th, we did not stir, because of the Rain. The 10th, incamp'd on the Bank of a small River, which we cross'd the 11th, and the same Day another River, and incamp'd on the Bank of it, and found it adorn'd vvith very fine Mulberry Trees. The 12th vve cross'd another River, and incamp'd near it. The 13th, came again to the River of *Canoes*, so call'd by Monsieur de la Sale, because he the first Time put Canoes into it, at his former Journey. We pass'd it the 14th, and incamped on the other Side where we again join'd the *Indians*.

*Provisions hid, spoils.* The 15th, we held on our Journey with them and found a pleasanter Country than that we had pass'd thro'; and Monsieur de la Sale having in his former Journey hid some Indian Wheat and Beans, two or three Leagues from that Place, and our Provisions beginning to fall short, it was thought fit to go to that Place. Accordingly he order'd the Sieurs *Duhaut*, *Hiens*, *Lio-*

; but took  
The 28th.  
One of  
that he  
the Marsh,  
oot of the

Indians, on  
had just  
the Fifth,  
out where  
discharges  
which we  
made, and  
her Rivers  
our Way.

f the Rain.  
a small Ri-  
d the same  
n the Bank  
very fine  
cross'd an-  
The 13th,  
so call'd by  
first Time  
rney. We  
the other  
s.

with them  
an that we  
Sale having  
ian Wheat  
from that  
o fall short,  
e. Accor-  
Hiens, Lio-  
tot

tot the Surgeon, his own *Indian*, and his Foot-  
man, whose Name was *Saget*, who were follow-  
ed by some Natives, to go to the Place he de-  
scribed to them, where they found all rotten  
and quite spoilt.

The 16, in their Return, they met with two  
Bullocks, which *Monsieur de la Sale's Indian*  
kill'd, whereupon they sent back his Footman,  
to give him Notice of what they had kill'd, that  
if he would have the Flesh dry'd, he might  
send Horses for it. The 17th, *Monsieur de la*  
*Sale* had the Horses taken up, and order'd the  
*Sieurs Moranget* and *de Male* and his Footman,  
to go for that Meat, and send back a Horse  
Load immediately, till the rest was dry'd.

*Monsieur Moranget*, when he came thither,  
found they had smoak'd both the Beeves, tho'  
they were not dry enough; and the said *Sieurs*  
*Liotot*, *Hiens*, *Dubaut* and the rest had laid aside  
the Marrow-Bones and others to roast them,  
and eat the Flesh that remain'd on them, as was  
usual to do. The *Sieur Moranget* found fault  
with it, he in a Passion seiz'd not only the Flesh  
that was smoak'd and dry'd, but also the Bones,  
without giving them any Thing; but on the  
contrary, threatning they should not eat so much  
of it, as they had imagin'd, and that he would  
manage that Flesh after another Manner.

This passionate Behaviour, so much out of  
Season, and contrary to Reason and Custom,  
touch'd the Surgeon *Liotot*, *Hiens* and *Dubaut*  
to the Quick, they having other Causes of Com-  
plaint against *Moranget*. They withdrew, and  
resolv'd together upon a bloody Revenge; they  
agreed upon the Manner of it, and concluded  
they would murder the *Sieur Moranget*, Mon-

H

sieur

Mar. 1687

*Discontent*  
*occasion'd*  
*by Monfr.*  
*Moran-*  
*get.*

*Conspiracy*  
*to murder*  
*Monfr. de*  
*la Sale.*

Mar. 1687 *seur de la Sale's* Footman and his *Indian*, because he was very faithful to him.

They waited till Night, when those unfortunate Creatures had supp'd and were asleep. *Liotot* the Surgeon was the inhuman Executioner, he took an Ax, began by the *Sieur Moranget*, giving him many Strokes on the Head; the same he did by the Footman and the *Indian*, killing them on the Spot, whilst his Fellow Villains, viz. *Duhaut*, *Hiens*, *Teissier* and *Larcheveque* stood upon their Guard, with their Arms, to fire upon such as should make any Resistance. The *Indian* and the Footman never stir'd, but the *Sieur Moranget* had so much Vigour as to sit up, but without being able to speak one Word, and the Assassins obliged the *Sieur de Marle* to make an End of him, tho' he was not in the Conspiracy.

Consult  
to murder  
Monsr. de  
la Sale.

This Slaughter had yet satisfy'd but one Part of the Revenge of those Murderers. To finish it and secure themselves it was requisite to destroy the Commander in Chief. They consulted about the safest Method to effect it, and resolve to go together to Monsieur de la Sale, to knock out the Brains of the most resolute immediately, and then it would be easier to overcome the rest. But the River, which was between them and us, being much swollen, the Difficulty of passing it made them put it off the 18th and 19th. On the other Hand Monsieur de la Sale was very uneasy, on Account of their long Stay. His Impatience made him resolve to go himself to find out his People and to know the Cause of it.

This was not done without many previous Tokens of Concern, and Apprehension. He seem'd

an, because

se unfortun-  
ere asleep.  
ecutioner,  
*Moranget*,  
Head; the  
the *Indian*,  
his Fellow  
er and *Lar-*  
with their  
ake any Re-  
man never  
o much Vi-  
ing able to  
obliged the  
im, tho' he

ut one Part  
To finish  
isite to de-  
ey consult-  
ect it, and  
*seur de la*  
e most reso-  
be easier to  
which was  
wollen, the  
ut it off the  
d Monsieur  
nt of their  
him resolve  
ple and to

ny previous  
ension. He  
seem'd

seem'd to have some Presage of his Misfortune, enquiring of some, whether the *Sieur Liotot*, *Hiens* and *Dubaut* had not express'd some Discontent; and not hearing any Thing of it, he could not forbear setting out the 20th, with *Father Anastasius* and an *Indian*, leaving me the Command in his Absence, and charging me from Time to Time to go the Rounds about our Camp, to prevent being surpriz'd, and to make a Smoke for him to direct his Way in Case of Need. When he came near the Dwelling of the Murderers, looking out sharp to discover something, he observed Eagles fluttering about a Spot, not far from them, which made him believe they had found some Carrion about the Mansion, and he fired a Shot, which was the Signal of his Death and forwarded it.

The Conspirators hearing the Shot, concluded it was *Monsieur de la Sale*, who was come to seek them. They made ready their Arms and provided to surprize him. *Dubaut* passed the River, with *Larcheveque*. The first of them spying *Monsieur de la Sale* at a Distance, as he was coming towards them, advanc'd and hid himself among the high Weeds, to wait his passing by, so that *Monsieur de la Sale* suspecting nothing, and having not so much as charg'd his Piece again, saw the aforesaid *Larcheveque* at a good Distance from him, and immediately ask'd for his Nephew *Moranget*, to which *Larcheveque* answer'd, That he was along the River. At the same Time the Traitor *Dubaut* fired his Piece and shot *Monfr. de la Sale* thro' the Head, so that he dropp'd down dead on the Spot, without speaking one Word.

Mar. 1687

He goes to  
seek them.

Is mur-  
der'd.

Mar 1687



Father *Anastafius*, who was then by his Side, stood stock still in a Fright, expecting the same Fate, and not knowing whether he should go forwards or backwards; but the Murderer *Duhaut* put him out of that Dread, bidding him not to fear, for no Hurt was intended him; that it was Despair that had prevail'd with him to do what he saw; that he had long desired to be revenged on *Moranget*, because he had design'd to ruin him, and that he was partly the Occasion of his Uncle's Death. This is the exact Relation of that Murder, as it was presently after told me by F. *Anastafius*.

His Character.

Such was the unfortunate End of Monsieur *de la Sale's* Life, at a Time when he might entertain the greatest Hopes, as the Reward of his Labours. He had a Capacity and Talent to make his Enterprize successful; his Constancy and Courage and his extraordinary Knowledge in Arts and Sciences, which render'd him fit for any Thing, together with an indefatigable Body, which made him surmount all Difficulties, would have procur'd a glorious Issue to his Undertaking, had not all those excellent Qualities been counterbalanced by too haughty a Behaviour, which sometimes made him insupportable, and by a Rigidity towards those that were under his Command, which at last drew on him an implacable Hatred, and was the Occasion of his Death.

Barbarity towards the dead Body.

The Shot which had kill'd Monsieur *de la Sale*, was also a Signal of the Murder to the Assassins for them to draw near. They all repair'd to the Place where the wretched dead Corps lay, which they barbarously strip'd to the Shirt, and vented their Malice in vile and opprobrious Language.



Language. The Surgeon *Liotot* said several Times in Scorn and Derision, *There thou liest, Great Bassa, there thou liest.* In Conclusion, they dragged it naked among the Bushes, and left it exposed to the ravenous Wild Beasts. So far was it from what a certain Author writes, of their having bury'd him and set up a Cross on his Grave.

Mar. 1687

*Murderers return to the Camp.*

When those Murderers had satiated their Rage, they set out to come to us at our Camp, with the dry'd Flesh, which they had caus'd to be brought over the River by the *Indians*, who had been Spectators of the Murder and of all the inhuman Actions that had been committed, with Amazement and Contempt of us. When they were come to the Camp, they found Messieurs *Cavelier*, the one Brother, the other Nephew to the murder'd Commander, whom Father *Anastafius* acquainted with the dismal End of our Chief, and enjoyn'd them Silence, which it is easy to imagine was very hard upon them; but it was absolutely necessary.

However, Monsieur *Cavelier* the Priest, could not forbear telling them, that if they would do the same by him, he would forgive them his Murder, and only desir'd them to give him a Quarter of an Hour to prepare himself: They answer'd, They had Nothing to say to him; that what they had done was the Effect of Despair, to be reveng'd for the ill Usage they had receiv'd.

I was absent at that Time; he they call'd *Larcheveque*, who, as I have said, was one of the Conspirators, had some Kindness for me, and knowing they design'd to make me away too, if

*Mr. 1687**The Author  
serv'd by a  
Friend.*

I stood upon my Defence, he parted from them, to give me Notice of their mischievous Resolution. He found me on a little rising Ground, where I was looking upon our Horses as they graz'd in a little adjacent Bottom. His Intelligence struck me to the Heart, not knowing whether I should fly or stay; but at length, having neither Powder nor Shot, nor Arms, and the said *Larcheveque* giving me Assurances of my Life, provided I was quiet and said Nothing, I committed my self to God's Protection, and went to them, without taking any Notice of what had been done.

*Dehaut,  
the Murderer,  
usurps the  
Command.*

*Dehaut*, puff'd up with his new gotten Authority, procur'd him by his Villany, as soon as he saw me, cry'd out, Every Man ought to command in his Turn; to which I made no Answer; and we were all of us oblig'd to stifle our Resentment, that it might not appear, for our Lives depended on it. However, it was easy to judge with what Eyes Father *Anastasin*, Messieurs *Cavelier* and I beheld these Murderers, to whom we expected every Moment to fall Sacrifices. It is true, we dissembled so well, that they were not very suspicious of us, and that the Temptation we were under of making them away in Revenge for those they had murder'd, would have easily prevail'd and been put in Execution, had not Monsieur *Cavelier*, the Priest, always positively oppos'd it, alledging, that we ought to leave Vengeance to God.

*March  
continued.*

However the Murderers seiz'd upon all the Effects, without any Opposition, and then we began to talk of proceeding on our Journey.

We

from them,  
us Refo-  
Ground,  
as they  
His Intel-  
knowing  
ngth, ha-  
rms, and  
ces of my  
othing, I  
tion, and  
Notice of

en Autho-  
oon as he  
t to com-  
e no An-  
d to stif-  
appear, for  
er, it was  
*Anastasiu*,  
Murder-  
oment to  
embled so  
ous of us,  
under of  
those they  
vail'd and  
n'sieur Ca-  
ppos'd it,  
ngeance to  
on all the  
then we  
r Journey.  
We

We decamp'd the 21st, with our *Indians*, and march'd with such a heavy Rain, that we were oblig'd to halt on the Bank of a great Stream, where one of the Natives that had left us, arriv'd with his Wife. We went on the 22d and 23d, and pass'd the River, where Father *Anastasiu*, Monsieur *Cavelier* and I, who could not swim, had been drown'n, but that the Natives assist-ed and sav'd us. The 24th, we went on thro' a marshy Country, never quitting a small Path which led to the Village of the *Cenis*, till the 28th, when we rested on the Bank of a River of the same Name, tho' about ten Leagues di-  
stant from the Village.

Mar. 1687



*Cenis Ri-  
ver.*

We had hop'd to ford that River, as Monsieur *de la Sale* had done, when he return'd from that Country; but it was so swollen, that there was no doing it, and we were forced to make a Canoe of Bullocks Hider. Whilst we were employ'd at that Work, the *Indians* swam over and went to give Notice to the *Cenis* of our Arrival.

We found the Country pleasant enough about that River, tho' the Land did not seem to be any of the best; but still it was delightful to the Eye, well planted with fine Trees of several Sorts, among which, is one that Monsieur *de la Sale* had nam'd *Copal*, being very beautiful, the Leaves of it between those of the Maple and the Lime Trees in Resemblance, and from it comes a Gum, of a very agreeable Scent. In the same Place we saw a grbat Tree, on which the late Monsieur *de la Sale* had caus'd Crosses and the Arms of *France* to be carv'd.

*Copal  
Tree.*

M<sup>r</sup>. 1687.

The Author  
sent to the  
Cenis for  
Provisions.

The Hunting of Bullocks had fail'd us, and we had seen none from the Place where our late Leader had been murder'd. Thus our Provisions began to fall short, and it was resolv'd on the 29th, to send some Men before, to the Village of the Cenis, to know, whether they had any Indian Corn, and were willing to barter for it. I was appointed, with the Surgeon *Liotot*, the *Tesficiers*, and *Hiens*, vvho was a Buccanier, Monsieur de la Sale had taken up at *Petit Gouave*, to go with him upon this Expedition. I was very unwilling to undertake that Journey, with a Murderer and two of his Companions, of whom I was suspicious; but it was very requisite to obey, and *Duhaut* having all the Effects in his Possession, alledging, that a great Part of them belong'd to him, he gave us some Axes and Knives to barter for Indian Corn, as also for Horses, if any were to be had, and accordingly we pass'd the River.

The Coun-  
try de-  
scrib'd.

We found the Country made up of several little Hills, of an indifferent Height, on which there are Abundance of Walnut-Trees and Oaks, not so large as what we had seen before, but very agreeable. The Weeds which had been some Time before burnt by the Natives, began to spring up again, and discover'd large green Fields very pleasing to the Sight.

When we had travell'd some Time, we discover'd three Men a Horseback, coming towards us from the Village, and being come near them, saw one dress'd after the Spanish Fashion, with a little Doublet, the Body wherof was of blue, and the Sleeves of white

Fustian,

Fustian, as it were imbroider'd, with very  
 streight Breeches, white worsted Stockings,  
 Woollen-Garters, a broad-brim'd, flat-crown'd  
 Hat, and long Hair. We presently concluded  
 he was a *Spaniard*, and th<sup>t</sup> rather because we  
 had been told, that some of them were to come  
 to join in League with the *Cenis*, against an E-  
 nemy Nation, and we were at a Nonplus; for  
 if vve fell into their Hands, we must never ex-  
 pect to get away, but be condemn'd to serve  
 either in the Mines, or in the Quarries, in the  
 Kingdom of *Mexico*, for which Reason we pro-  
 vided to give the pretended *Spaniard* an unkind  
 Reception, and then to make the best of our  
 Way back.

Being come up to him, I spoke some Words  
 of *Spanish* and *Italian*, to which he return'd  
 no Answer; but on the contrary, made use  
 of the Word *Couffica*, which in the Lan-  
 guage of the *Cenis*, signifies, *I do not under-  
 stand you*; which Answer of his remov'd our  
 Apprehensions. The two others were quite  
 naked, one of them being mounted on a  
 fine grey Mare, and on her were besides  
 two Panniers, handsomly made of Reeds, full  
 of very fine Meal parch'd, or roasted. Af-  
 ter several Questions, to which we had no  
 very satisfactory Answers, we lighted Fire to  
 make them smoke, and then they presented  
 us with the two Panniers full of Meal, giv-  
 ing us to understand, that their Chief ex-  
 pected us in the Village, and having signi-  
 fy'd, that they were sent to meet us, we  
 gave them some Knives and Strings of  
 Beads.

We

Mar. 1687

A Man  
 clad like a  
 Spaniard.

Mar. 1687



We ask'd them, whether they had any Men among them like him that was a Horseback in the *Spanish* Habit, they answer'd, there were two in a Neighbouring Nation, call'd *Afony*, and that he who was clad, had been in their Country, and brought thence the Cloaths we saw him wear. That Man then shew'd us a *Spanish* printed Paper, containing the Indulgences granted to the Missioners of *New Mexico*. After this they left us to go on, to our People, for which Reason I writ a Note, giving an Account of our having met them.

We alighted to eat, and let our Horses graze on the Bank of a Rivulet; but it was not long before the same Natives, who had been with us before, appear'd again hard by us. We made Signs to them to draw near and eat with us; which they did, and then went along with us towards the Village, which we would not go into, because it was Night. The *Indian* that was clad, stay'd all Night with us, and the two others went away.

When it was Day, we held on our Way to the Village; the *Indian* that was with us conducting us to their Chief's Cottage. By the Way, we saw many other Cottages, and the Elders coming to meet us in their Formalities, which consisted in some GoatsSkins dress'd and painted of several Colours, which they wore on their Shoulders like Belts, and Plumes of Feathers of several Colours, on their Heads, like Coronets. Six or seven of them had square Sword Blades, like the *Spanish*, on the Hilt whereof they had fasten'd great Plumes of Feathers, and several Hawks Bells; some of them had Clubs, which they call Head-breakers, some

only

The *Cenis*  
meets the  
French in  
solemn  
Manner.



any Men  
Horseback  
there were  
all'd *Affony*,  
en in their  
cloaths we  
d us a *Spa-*  
ndulgences  
*xico*. After  
People, for  
an Account

our Horses  
t it was not  
o had been  
by us. We  
d eat with  
along with  
would not  
*Indian* that  
nd the two

ur Way to  
ith us con-  
y the Way,  
the Elders  
ies, which  
and painted  
e on their  
Feathers of  
like Coro-  
had square  
the Hilt  
mes of Bea-  
me of them  
akers, some  
only

only their Bows and Arrows; others, Bits of *Mar. 1687*  
white Linen, reaching from Shoulder to Shoul-  
der. All their Faces were daub'd vvith black  
or red, There were twelve Elders, who walk'd  
in the Middle, and the Youth and Warriors in  
Ranks, on the Sides of those old Men.

Being come up to us in that Manner, he  
that conducted us, made a Sign for us to halt,  
vvhich vvhen vve had done, all the old Men  
lifted up their Right Hands above their Heads,  
crying out in a most ridiculous Manner; but  
it behov'd us to have a Care of laughing. That  
done, they came and imbrac'd us, using all Sorts  
of Endearments. Then they made us smoke,  
and brought to us a French Man of *Provence*,  
vvho vvvas one of those that had forsaken the  
late *Monfieur de la Sale*, at his first Journey.

*A French  
Man a-  
mong the  
Indians.*

The vvhole Company conducted us after the  
same Manner, to their Chief's Cottage; and af-  
ter we had staid there a short Time, they led us  
to a larger Cottage, a Quarter of a League  
from thence, being the Hut in vvhich they have  
their publick Rejoycings, and the great As-  
semblies. We found it furnish'd with Mats for  
us to sit on. The Elders seated themselves round  
about us, and they brought us to eat, some  
*Sagamite*, which is their Pottage, little Beans,  
Bread made of *Indian* Corn, and another Sort  
they make vvith boil'd Flower, and at last they  
made us smoke.

*Indian En-  
ertain-  
ment.*

During our Repast, they entertain'd us vvith  
the Discourse of their Design to make War on  
a Nation, vvho vvvere their Enemies, and whom  
they call'd *Cannokantimo*. When it vvvas over,  
vve presented them, according to Custom,  
vvith some Knives and Strings of Beads for  
their

Mar. 1687

their Wives. We desir'd them to afford us some *Indian* Corn, in Exchange for other Things, vvhich they promis'd, and the French Man vvho vvvas vvith them, having told us, that there vvvas a District, vvhich afforded more Corn, than that vvhere vve vvvere, and vvhere his Cottage vvvas, vve resolv'd to go thither. We propos'd it to the Elders, vvho would needs go along vvith us, attended by a great Number of Youth, and having got ready our Horses, vve set out for that Place.

By the Way, we saw several Cottages at certain Distances, stragling up and down, as the Ground happens to be fit for Tillage. The Field lies about the Cottage, and at other Distances there are other large Huts, not inhabited, but only serving for publick Assemblies, either upon Occasion of Rejoycings, or to consult about Peace and War.

*Huts and  
Families  
in them.*

The Cottages that are inhabited, are not each of them for a private Family, for in some of them there are fifteen or twenty, each of which has its Nook or Corner, Bed and other Utensils to its self; but without any Partition to separate it from the rest: However, they have Nothing in Common besides the Fire, which is in the Midst of the Hut, and never goes out. It is made of great Trees, the Ends whereof are laid together, so that when once lighted, it lasts a long Time, and the first Comer takes Care to keep it up.

*Manner of  
Building.*

The Cottages are round at the Top, after the Manner of a Bee-Hive, or a Reek of Hay. Some of them are sixty Foot Diameter. In Order to build them, they plant Trees as thick as a Man's Thigh, tall and strait, and placing them

in  
them  
ther,  
they l  
they  
burn  
on the  
The  
and G  
wove,  
some  
skilful  
Flesh  
said,  
small B  
their E  
are ma  
above  
and Bu  
which  
and Bl  
from a  
Whe  
give on  
an Hon  
they ha  
Manne  
Land b  
then th  
and M  
from C  
Land  
This  
Surface  
Instrum  
make t  
Wood,  
them

to afford us  
for other  
the French  
g told us,  
orded more  
and vvhhere  
go thither.  
who would  
by a great  
ready our

Cottages at  
down, as the  
village. The  
t other Di-  
not inha-  
Assemblies,  
or to con-

ed, are not  
for in some  
ty, each of  
d and other  
ny Partition  
wever, they  
s the Fire,  
and never  
s, the Ends  
when once  
d the first

Top, after  
eck of Hay.  
ter. In Or-  
ees as thick  
and placing  
them

them in a Circle, and joyning the Tops to-  
ther, from the Dome, or round Top, then  
they lash and cover them with Weeds. When  
they remove their Dwellings, they generally  
burn the Cottages they leave, and build new  
on the Ground they design to inhabit.

Mar. 1687



Their Moveables are some Bullocks Hides  
and Goats Skins well cur'd, some Mats close  
wove, wherewith they adorn their Huts, and  
some Earthen Vessels, which they are very  
skilful at making, and wherein they boil their  
Flesh or Roots, or *Sagamise*, which, as has been  
said, is their Pottage. They have also some  
small Baskets made of Canes, serving to put in  
their Fruit and other Provisions. Their Beds  
are made of Canes, rais'd two or three Foot  
above the Ground, handsomly fitted with Mats  
and Bullocks Hides, or Goats Skins well cur'd,  
which serve them for Feather Beds, or Quilts  
and Blankets; and those Beds are parted one  
from another by Mats hung up.

Their move  
ables.

Beds.

When they design to Till the Ground, they  
give one another Notice, and very often above  
an Hundred of each Sex meet together. When  
they have till'd that Piece of Land, after their  
Manner, and spent part of the Day, those the  
Land belongs to, give the others to Eat, and  
then they spend the rest of the Day in Dancing  
and Merry Making. This same is practis'd  
from Canton to Canton, and so they till  
Land all together.

Tillage.

This Tillage consists in breaking up just the  
Surface of the Earth with a Sort of Wooden  
Instrument, like a little Pick-axe, which they  
make by splitting the End of a thick Piece of  
Wood, that serves for a Handle, and putting  
another

Instrument  
for Tilling.

**Mar. 1687** another Piece of Wood sharp Pointed at one End into the Slit. This Instrument serves them instead of a Hoe, or Spade, for they have no Iron Tools. When the Land has been thus till'd or broke up, the Women Sow and Plant the *Indian* Corn, Beans, Pompions, Water Melons, and other Grain and Garden Ware, which is for their Sustenance.

The *Indians* are generally Handsom, but **Indians** disfigure themselves by making Scores, or Streaks on their Faces, from the Top of the Forehead down the Nose to the Tip of the Chin; which is done by pricking the Skin with Needles, or other sharp Instruments, till it bleeds, whereon they strevv fine Powder of Charcoal, and that sinks in and mixes with the Blood within the Skin. They also make after the same Manner, the Figures of living Creatures, of Leaves and Flowers on their Shoulders, Thighs, and other Parts of their Bodies, and Paint themselves, as has been said before, with Black or Red, and sometimes both together.

The Women are generally well Shap'd, and **Women,** would not be disagreeable, did they adhere to Nature; but they Disguise themselves as ridiculously as the Men, not only with the Streak they have like them down their Face, but by other Figures they make on it, at the Corners of their Eyes, and on the other Parts of their Bodies; whereof they make more particular Show on their Bosom, and those who have the most, are reckoned the handsomest; tho' that pricking in that Part be extremely painful to them.

It is they that do all the Work in the Cottage, either in Pounding the *Indian* Corn and Baking the Meal, or making the Pottage of the said Meal, by them call'd *Sagamite*, or in dressing their other Provisions, or drying or parching, or smoaking their Flesh, fetching the Wood they have Occasion for, or the Flesh of Bullocks, or other Beasts kill'd by their Husbands in the Woods, which are often at a great Distance, and afterwards Dressing them as has been said. They Sow and Plant, when the Land has been broke up, and in short, do almost all that is requisite for the Support of Life.

Mar. 1687

They do the  
Work at  
Home.

I did not observe that those Women were naturally given to Lewdness; but their Virtue is not Proof against some of our Toys, when presented them, as Needles, Knives, and more particularly Strings of Beads, whereof they make Necklaces and Bracelets, and that Temptation is rarely resisted by them, and the less because they have no Religion or Law to prohibit that vile Practice. It is true their Husbands, when they take them in the Fact, sometimes do punish them, either by Separation or otherwise; but that is rare.

Their Be-  
haviour.

The Country of those *Indians* being generally subject to no Cold, almost all of them go naked; unless when the *Norab* Wind blows, then they cover themselves with a Bullock's Hide, or Goat's Skin cur'd. The Women wear nothing but a Skin, Mat, or Clout, hanging round them like a Petticoat, and reaching down half way their Legs, which hides their Nakedness before and behind. On their Heads they have nothing

Habit.

*Mar. 1687* thing but their Hair platted and knotted behind.

*Manners.* As for their Manners, it may be said of these as of all other *Indians* of that great Continent, that they are not Mischievous, unless wrong'd or attack'd; in which Case they are all Fierce and Revengeful. They watch all Opportunities to be Reveng'd, and never let any slip, when offer'd, which is the Cause of their being continually at War with their Neighbours, and of that Martial Humour, so Predominant among them.

*Religion.* As to the Knowledge of a God, they did not seem to us to have any fix'd Notion of Him; it is true, we met with some on our Way, who as far as we could judge, believ'd, there was some Superior Being, which was above all Things, and this they testify'd by lifting up their Hands and Eyes to Heaven, yet without any Manner of Concern, as believing that the said exalted Being does not regard at all, what is done here below. However none of them having any Places of Worship, Ceremonies, or Prayers, to denote the divine Homage, it may be said of them all, that they have no Religion, at least those that we saw.

*Ceremonies.* However, they observe some Ceremonies; but whether they have any Regard to a real or pretended Superior Being, or whether they are only popular, and proceeding from Custom, is what we were not able to discover. Those Ceremonies are as follows. When the Corn is ripe, they gather a certain Quantity in a Maund or Basket, which is placed on a Sort of Seat or Stool, dedicated to that Use, and serving only upon those misterious Occasions, which they have a great Veneration for. The



Mar. 1687

The Basket with the Corn being placed on that honour'd Stool, one of the Elders holds out his Hands over it, and talks a long Time; after which, the said old Man distributes the Corn among the Women, and no Person is allow'd to eat of the new Corn, till eight Days after that Ceremony. This seems to be in the Nature of Offering up or Blessing the first Fruits of their Harvest.

At their Assemblies, when the *Sagamite*, or Pottage, which is the most essential Part of their Meal, is boil'd in a great Pot, they place that Pot on the Stool of Ceremony above mention'd, and one of the Elders stretches out his Hands over it, muttering some Words between his Teeth for a considerable Time, after which, they fall to eat.

When the young Folks are grown up to be fit to go to the Wars, and take upon them to be Soldiers, their Garment, consisting of some Skin, or Clout, together with their Bow, Quiver and Arrows, is placed on the aforesaid Stool, an old Man stretches out his Hands over them, mutters the Words as above, and then the Garments, Bows, Quivers, and Arrows are given to the Persons they belong to. This may be compar'd to Something of a Ceremony of Knighting among them. The same Ceremonies are us'd by them in the cultivating of their Grain and Product, but particularly of the *Tabacco*, whereof they have a Sort, which has smaller Leaves than Ours; it is almost ever green, and they use it in Leaves.

This is what we observ'd among the *Cenis*, whose Customs and Manners differ very little from those of other Nations, which we had seen before,

Mar. 1687

before and saw afterwards. As to the Point of Religion, it is not to be infer'd from what I have said above, that there is none throughout that vast Continent: The Account I have given only regards those Nations we saw; there may be others that have some Worship, and I remember I have heard Monsieur de la Sale say, that the Nation call'd *Takenfa*, neighbouring on the *Illinois*, ador'd the Fire, and that they had Cottages which they made use of, as Temples.

Nation,  
what is  
meant  
here by it.

Before I conclude this short Account of the Religion, Customs and Manners of the *Cenis*, which belong'd properly to this Place, it is fit here also to observe, that the Word Nation, is not to be understood, among those *Indians*, to denote a People possessing a whole Province, or vast Extent of Land. Those Nations are no other than a Parcel of Villages, dispers'd for the Space of twenty or thirty Leagues at most, which compose a distinct People or Nation; and they differ from one another rather in Language than in Manners, wherein they are all much alike, or at least they vary but little, as has been mention'd above. As for the Names of them, here follow those of such as we travel'd through, or were near the Way we held from our leaving our Habitation near the Bay of the Holy Ghost, till we came among the *Cenis*.

Names of  
Nations.

The *Spicheats*, *Kabeyes*, *Thecamons*, *Thearemetts*, *Kiabaha*, *Chaumenes*, *Kouans*, *Arhau*, *Enepiaks*, *Ahonerhopihaim*, *Koienkake*, *Konkone*, *Omeaoffe*, *Kereimen*, *Ahekousn*, *Meghty*, *Tetamones*, *Otenmarhan*, *Kouayon* and *Meracouman*. All these Nations are on the North of the River called *la Maligne*.

Point of  
n what I  
oughout  
ve given  
here may  
and I re-  
Sale say,  
ighbouring  
that they  
as Tem-

ant of the  
the *Cenis*,  
ace, it is  
he Word  
ong those  
g a whole  
those Na-  
f Villages,  
or thirty  
istinct Peo-  
a one ano-  
Manners,  
or at least  
mention'd  
, here fol-  
through, or  
our leaving  
Holy Ghost,

*Thearemetts*,  
*Enepialm*,  
*Omeaoffe*,  
*Otenmar*-  
these Na-  
r called *la*  
*Maligne*.

# into NORTH AMERICA. 115

*Maligne*. Those that follow, are on the West Mar. 1687  
and North-West of the same River.

The *Kannihouan*, *Tohaha*, *Pihir*, *Cayabegux*,  
*Onapien*, *Pickar*, *Tokau*, *Kuassés*, *Chancres*, *Tese-  
rabecretes*, *Isopohouen*, *Fercentcha*, *Panego*, *Petao*,  
*Petzare*, *Peisacha*, *Peihoun*, *Orcan* and *Piou*. This  
last Nation borders upon the *Cenis*, at the En-  
trance into whose first Village I left my Reader,  
to give an Account of the Inhabitants, and  
thither I return, to proceed with my Relation  
and our Journey to the Village, the *French Man*  
who liv'd among the Natives was to conduct us to.

We arriv'd there at Night, and found other  
Elders coming out to meet us, much after the  
same Manner as the others mention'd before.  
They led us to their Cottage, made us sit down  
on Mats and smoke, but not with so much Ce-  
remony as the others. That done, it was Time  
for us to take our Rest, having given them to  
understand that we were weary.

The *French Provencal* would needs have us  
go to his Cottage, that is to the Hut where he  
had his Dwelling; for, as I have said, there  
are several Families in one of them, and that  
was one of the greatest in the Canton, having  
been the Habitation of one of their Chief's,  
lately deceased.

French  
Entertain-  
ed by the  
Natives.

They allotted us a Place there, for our Goods  
and Packs, the Women immediately made Sa-  
gamite or Pottage, and gave it us. Having  
eaten, we ask'd the *French Man* whether we  
were safe, and he answering we were, we lay  
down, but yet could not sleep sound.

The next Day, being the first of *April*, the  
Elders came to receive and conducted us to the  
Cottage where we had been the Day before.

Apr. 1687



A Horse  
sold for an  
Ax.

After the usual Ceremonies, we traded with them for Corn, Meat and Beans, giving in Exchange for the same, Needles, Knives, Rings and other Toys. We also purchased a very fine Stone Hatchet, that would have been worth twenty Pistoles in France, for an Ax.

The Day was spent in driving our small Bargains and gathering Provisions, which the Women brought. When that was done, it was agreed, that I should remain there, to lay up more Store, and that the others should return to our Company, which we had left near the River, to carry the Provisions and satisfy them they might come safely.

Tho' I thought my self not over secure among the *Indians*, and besides had the Dissatisfaction of understanding none of their Language; yet was I not unwilling to stay, that I might have an Opportunity of seeing the two other *French Men*, who had forsaken the late *Monsieur de la Sale*, when he first travell'd into that Country, that I might enquire of them, whether they had heard no talk of the *Mississipi River*, for I still held my Resolution of parting from our wicked Murderers.

As soon as they were gone, I gave a young *Indian* a Knife, to go bid those two other *French Men* come to me, and whilst he was going I drove on my little Trade for Provisions, and had frequent Visits from the Elders, who entertain'd me by Signs, with an Account of their intended War; to which I still answer'd, nodding my Head, tho' very often I knew not what they meant. It was some Difficulty to me to secure my small Merchandize, especially at Night, for the Natives were covetous of them.

This

oyage

ed with  
g in Ex-  
s, Rings  
a very  
n worth

small Bar-  
the Wo-  
e, it was  
to lay up  
ld return  
near the  
nd satisfy

secure a-  
e Dissatis-  
their Lan-  
ay, that I  
g the two  
en the late  
vell'd into  
e of them,  
he Mississi-  
of parting

re a young  
two other  
he was go-  
Provisions,  
lders, who  
Account of  
l answer'd,  
I knew not  
Difficulty to  
e, especially  
ous of them.  
This

This Care, which kept me from Sleeping sound, was the Occasion, that one Night I heard some Body moving near my Bed, and opening my Eyes, by the Light of the Fire, which never goes out in those Cottages, perceiv'd a Man stark naked, with a Bow and two Arrows in his Hand, who came and sat down by me, without saying any Thing. I view'd him for some Time, I spoke to him, he made me no Answer, and not knowing what to think of it, I laid hold of my two Pistols and my Firelock, which the Man perceiving, he went and sat by the Fire. I follow'd, and looking stedfastly on him, he knew and spoke to me, throwing his Arms about and embracing me, and then made himself known to be one of the French Men I had sent for.

We fell into Discourse, I ask'd him for his Comrade, he told me, he durst not come, for Fear of Monsieur *de la Sale*. They were both Sailors, this Man, who was of *Britany*, was call'd *Buter*; the other, of *Rochelle*, *Grollet*. They had, in that short Space of Time, so perfectly enur'd themselves to the Customs of the Natives, that they were become meer Savages. They were naked, their Faces and Bodies with Figures wrought on them, like the rest. They had taken several Wives, been at the Wars and kill'd their Enemies with their Firelocks, which had gain'd them Reputation; but having no more Powder nor Ball, their Arms were grown useless, and they had been forc'd to learn to shoot with Bows and Arrows. As for Religion, they were not troubled with much of it, and that Libertine Life they led, was pleasing to them.

*The Author  
meets ano-  
ther French  
Man among  
the Indians*

*French  
turn'd sa-  
vage.*

Apr. 1687.

I acquainted this Man with the unfortunate Death of *Monsr. de la Sale*, his Nephew and the rest, at which, he was surpris'd and concern'd, at least in outward Appearance. I ask'd him, whether he had not heard talk of the *Mississipi*; he told me he had not; but only that there was a great River forty Leagues from thence towards the *N.W.* where the Natives said there were many Nations along its Banks. That made me believe, it was the very River we were in Search of, or at least that it must be the Way to come at it. I gave him to eat, and we went to Rest.

The next and the following Days, I continu'd trading, and the Elders their Visits, and their Discourse by Signs, concerning their intended War. Some of them gave me to understand, that they had been among the *Spaniards*, who are nevertheless about two hundred Leagues from them. They spoke some Words of broken *Spanish*, as *Capita*, instead of *Capitan*, a Captain, and *Cohavillo* instead of *Cavallo*, a Horse, and so of some others. *Buter*, the *French* Man return'd to his Dwelling, I gave him some Strings of Beads for his Wives, and desir'd him to send the other *French* Man to me.

In the mean Time my being alone, as to any Person I could converse with, grew very irksome to me, and I know not whether an old Man did not perceive it; for he thought it would be proper to bring a Companion, to divert me, and at Night I was surpris'd to see a young Maid come sit down by me, and to hear the old Man tell me, he had brought her to be my Wife, and gave her to me; but I had far different Thoughts to disturb me. I spoke not

Indian  
Maid  
brought to  
the Author.

one

one  
Tim  
perc  
the

T  
till t  
I ha  
Dres  
him,  
their  
whos  
have  
cut h  
Peop  
on th  
only  
Temp

I r  
sieur  
firm'd  
Nativ  
which  
and t  
on th  
Opini  
after,  
to Ca  
told  
desire  
not, f  
and th  
them,

The  
which  
each  
carry



one Word to that poor Maid ; she stay'd some Time expecting I would take Notice of her, and perceiving I did not stir, or speak one Word, she withdrew.

Apr. 1687



Thus I continu'd, without hearing any News, till the Sixth of *April*, when the two *French Men*, I have spoken of, came both, in the *Indian Dress*, each of them having only a Clout about him, some Turkey Feathers on their Shoulders, their Heads and Feet bare. The latter of them whose Name was *Grollet*, had not consented to have his Face mark'd like the other, nor to cut his Hair after the *Indian Manner* ; for those People cut off all theirs, except a small Lock on the Crown of the Head, like the Turks, only some of them have small Tresses on the Temples.

French Men like Indians.

I repeated to them the Narrative of *Monsieur de la Sale's* unfortunate Story. They confirm'd what I had been told before, that the Natives had talk'd to them of the great River, which was forty Leagues off, towards the *N. E.* and that there were People like us, that dwell on the Banks of it. This confirm'd me in the Opinion, that it was the River so much sought after, and that we must go that Way to return to *Canada* or towards *New England*. They told me, they would willingly go with us. I desired them to keep it secret, which they did not, for being inform'd that *Monsieur Cavalier* and the others were coming, they went to meet them, and I was again left alone.

See p. 118

The 8th, three Men came to me, one of which was the *French Man of Provence*, with each of them a Horse, sent by our People to carry away all the Provisions I had got together,

Apr. 1687

The Murderers resolve to return to the Habitation of St. Lewis.

having taken a Resolution, as those Persons they had sent told us, to return to the Dwelling of St. Lewis, about the Bay of the same Name, from whence we came; designing, as they pretended, to build a Boat there, to carry them over to the Islands of *America*; an impracticable Notion, for all our Carpenters were dead, and tho' they had been alive, they were so ignorant, that none of them would have known which Way to go about that Work; besides that, we were destitute of all Necessaries for that Effect. However we must obey, and set out with our Provisions. The Rain having detain'd us the 9th on the Way, we could not come up to them till the next Day, being the Tenth.

Father *Anastafius* gave me the Confirmation of that Design, and farther told me how roughly they had been treated by those Murderers since my Departure. I know not what it was that mov'd them to it, but they had resolved to seperate themselves from those Villains, and that we should eat apart, viz. Monsieur *Cavelier* the Priest, F. *Anastafius*, young *Cavelier* and I, which was very agreeable to us, because at least we could talk freely, which we durst not do before; but at the same Time they allow'd us no more Provisions than would suffice to keep us from starving, without giving us Share of any Flesh, tho' they often kill'd.

The Author and others resolve to part from the Murderers.

Our Tyrants still holding their Resolution to return to our former Habitation, thought they had not Horses enough, and therefore deputed four of their Number, one of which was the French Man half turn'd *Indian*, to return to the Village of the *Cenis* and endeavour to barter for some

some  
to le  
much  
Hab  
the  
unde  
haut,  
Axes  
Shot  
for t  
To  
Prop  
able,  
turn  
panic  
deal  
fects  
most  
Dwel  
had b  
But i  
of N  
to us  
who  
been  
cover  
tions  
they  
Care  
they  
send  
Mon  
we ha  
were  
Affai

Persons  
the Dwel-  
the same  
gning, as  
e, to car-  
; an im-  
ters were  
they were  
ould have  
t Work;  
ecessaries  
obey, and  
in having  
could not  
being the

firmation  
ow rough-  
Murderers  
at it was  
esolved to  
ains, and  
ur Cavalier  
lier and I,  
se at least  
st not do  
allow'd us  
to keep us  
are of any

olution to  
ought they  
e deputed  
n was the  
urn to the  
barter for  
some

## into NORTH AMERICA.

121

some. At the same Time we agreed together to let those Gentlemen know, that we were too much fatigued to return with them to the said Habitation, and were resolved to remain in the Village of the *Cenis*. Monsieur *Cavelier* undertook to be our Speaker, and to desire *Dubaut*, who was Master of all, to give us some Axes, Knives and Strings of Beads, Powder and Shot, offering to give him a Note of his Hand for the same.

To conclude, Monsieur *Cavelier* made the Proposal to *Dubaut*, disguis'd it the best he was able, and *Dubaut* took till the next Day to return his Answer. He consulted with his Companions, and acquainted us, that they would deal handsomely by us, and give us half the Effects and all the Axes, intending to make the most Speed they could, to get to our former Dwelling, and to put in Execution what they had before design'd, as to the Building of a Bark. But in Case they could not succeed, for want of Necessaries, they would immediately return to us and bring F. *Zenobius* along with them, who would be serviceable to us, because, having been with Monsieur *de la Sale* upon his first Discovery, he understood the Language of the Nations about the *Mississipi* River. That whilst they were upon that Journey, we should take Care to gather a Stock of Provisions, and that if they succeeded in building the Bark, they would send us Word, that we might repair to them. Monsieur *Cavelier* approv'd of all they said, tho' we had other Designs. However it prov'd we were all Mistaken, for Providence had order'd Affairs otherwise.

Apr. 1687

Design of  
the Mur-  
derers.

We

Apr. 1687



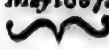
We stay'd there some Time, expecting those who were gone to the *Cenis*, they staying longer than was requisite for that Journey. The overflowing of the River was their Pretence, but the true Reason was the Women, who as I have said, are not so forward as to offer themselves, but on the other Hand will not be over difficult in complying for some little Present, and those who were sent did not grudge their Time. In the mean while the Posture of our Affairs changed, as follows.

Murderers  
change  
their Mind.

One of our half Savage *French* Men, whom I had acquainted with our Design to go find the *Mississipi*, communicated it to *Hautot*, telling him all the Particulars he had before acquainted me with; whereupon *Dubaut* chang'd his Mind, as to the Design of going to the Habitation of *St. Lewis*, resolving to follow our intended Way and execute our Project. He imparted his Thoughts to his Companions, who were of the same Opinion, and all of them acquainted us, that they were ready to put in Execution the Enterprize we had form'd.

This Change troubled us very much, there being nothing we coveted more than to part with those Miscreants, from whom we could at a long Run expect no better Usage than they had afforded our Commander and his Friends. However, it was still requisite to dissemble, there being no other Remedy at that Time: But God's Justice provided for and rescued us. We continued in that Camp all the remaining Part of *April*, expecting the Persons that had been sent to the *Cenis*, and *Dubaut* intending to begin to put in Execution his Design of going to find out the *Mississipi*, with us, made

us

us advance towards the River that was near, in *May 1687.*  
 order to pass it as soon as fallen, and repair to   
 the Village of the *Canis*.

We staid three Days longer in that Post, at *Murderers*  
 the End whereof, he we call'd *Larcheveque*, one *differ in*  
 of those that had been sent out, cross'd the *Opinion.*  
 River. He was *Dubaut's* Creature, and an Ac-  
 complice in the Murder of *Monsieur de la Sale*.  
 He inform'd *Dubaut*, that one they call'd *Hiens*,  
 who was also one of our Messengers, and had  
 stay'd on the other Side of the River, had  
 heard of *Dubaut* and the rest altering their Re-  
 solution, and that he was not of their Mind.  
*Hiens* was a *Buccanier*, and by Birth a *German*.  
*Monsieur de la Sale* had brought him from *Petie*  
*Gouave*, and he was also accessary to the late  
 Murders.

After we had been some Days longer in the  
 same Place, *Hiens* arriv'd with the two half  
 Savage *French* Men and about twenty Natives.  
 He went immediately to *Dubaut*, and after  
 some Discourse, told him, he was not for go-  
 ing towards the *Mississipi*, because it would be of  
 dangerous Consequence for them, and therefore  
 demanded his Share of the Effects he had seiz'd  
 upon. *Dubaut* refusing to comply, and affirm-  
 ing, that all the Axes were his own; *Hiens*,  
 who it is likely had laid the Design before to  
 kill him, immediately drew his Pistol, and fired  
 it upon *Dubaut*, who stagger'd about four Paces  
 from the Place and fell down dead. At the  
 same Time *Ruter*, who had been with *Hiens*,  
 fired his Piece upon *Liotot*, the Surgeon, and  
 shot him thro' with three Balls.

*Hiens*  
 kills *Du-*  
*haut*, and  
*Ruter*  
*Liotot.*

These Murders committed before us, put me  
 into a terrible Consternation; for believing the  
 same

May 1687.

fame was design'd for me, I laid hold of my Fire-Lock to defend my self; but *Hiens* cry'd out to me, to fear nothing, to lay down my Arms, and assur'd me he had no Design against me; but that he had reveng'd his Master's Death. He also satisfy'd Monsieur *Cavelier* and Father *Anastafius*, who were as much frightened as my self, declaring he meant them no Harm, and that tho' he had been in the Conspiracy, yet had he been present at the Time when Monsieur *de la Sale* was kill'd, he would not have consented, but rather have obstructed it.

*Liotot* liv'd some Hours after, and had the good Fortune to make his Confession; after which, the same *Ruter*, put him out of his Pain, with a Pistol-Shot. We dug a Hole in the Earth, and bury'd him in it with *Dubaut*, doing them more Honour than they had done to Monsieur *de la Sale* and his Nephew *Moranget*, whom they left to be devour'd by wild Beasts. Thus those Murderers met with what they had deserv'd, dying the same Death they had put others to.

More Mis-  
chief pre-  
vented.

The Natives, *Hiens* had brought with him, having been Spectators of that Murder, were in a Consternation, and that Affair was of dangerous Consequence to us, who stood in Need of them. It was therefore requisite to make the best of it, giving them to understand, that there had been Reason for so punishing those dead Persons, because they had all the Powder and Ball, and would not give any to the rest. They remain'd satisfy'd with that Excuse, and he who was call'd *Larcheveque*, and who was entirely devoted to *Dubaut*, being Abroad a hunting since the Morning, and not knowing what Misfor-

tune



d of my  
ens cry'd  
down my  
gn againſt  
Maſter's  
velier and  
frighted  
no Harm,  
iracy, yet  
Monſieur  
have con-

had the  
on ; after  
his Pain,  
ble in the  
ut, doing  
e to Mon-  
get, whom  
ts. Thus  
y had de-  
put others

h him, ha-  
were in a  
of dange-  
Need of  
make the  
that there  
dead Per-  
and Ball,  
They re-  
nd he who  
ntirely de-  
nting ſince  
at Misfor-  
tune

tune had hapned his Protector, and *Hiens* being reſolv'd to make away with him, Father *Anaſtaſius* and *Monſieur Cavalier* took ſo much Pains, that they diſſwaded him from it, and I went out and met *Larcheveque*, to give him Notice of that Diſaſter, and to inform him, how he was to behave himſelf. Thus I requited him for having come to give me Notice of *Monſieur de la Sale's* Death. I brought him to *Hiens*, who declar'd he deſign'd him no Harm, and *Larcheveque* gave him the ſame Aſſurances on his Part. Thus all Things are again compos'd, and nothing remain'd, but for us to ſet out, but firſt to know what we were to do, and vvhich Way to direct our Courſe.

Hereupon, *Hiens* took upon him to ſpeak, and ſaid, he had promis'd the Natives to go to the War vvith them, and deſign'd to be as good as his Word ; that if vve vvould expect his Return, we might by that Time conſider which Way he would move, and that in the mean Time we might ſtay in the Village among the *Cenis*. This was reſolv'd on ; we loaded all our Effects on our Horſes, and repair'd to the ſame Place and the ſame Cottage, where vve had been before, the Chief of it aſſigning us the one Half to lodge and lay up our Baggage.

When the Day for ſetting out for the War was come, *Hiens* departed with the Natives, four of our Comrades and the two half Savage French Men going along with him ; ſo that there were ſix of them, and each took a Horſe. *Hiens* left us all the Effects, and deſir'd we would ſtay for him, which we promis'd, not knowing how to avoid it, conſidering, that the *Indians* might have

May 1687.

Six French  
Men go to  
the Wars  
with the  
Natives.

*May 1687* have done us Harm, and even have obstructed our Departure. Thus we resign'd ourselves to Providence, and remain'd six of us together, viz. Father *Anastafius*, Monsieur *Cavalier*, his Nephew young *Cavelier*, young *Talen*, another Youth of *Paris*, and I. There also remain'd some old Men, who could not go to the War, and the Women. We were also join'd by two other *French* Men, who had been left on the other Side the River, being the *Provencal* and one *Teiffier*.

*Bewailing  
the Memo-  
ry of Men  
kill'd.*

During our Stay, and our Warriors being abroad upon that Expedition, the old Men often visited us, and told us News from the Army by Signs, which we understood nothing of. We were from Time to Time alarm'd, seeing the Women weep, without any visible Cause. The late Monsieur de la Sale had often told us, that the Women bewail'd those that were to be kill'd; but we were inform'd, that they did so, when they call'd to Mind some who had been slain in the former Wars; which dispell'd our Apprehensions. However we were uneasy, because those old Men and Women examin'd us every Morning and Evening when we perform'd our Devotions.

We laid hold of that Opportunity to give them to understand, that we paid our Duty to one God, the only Supreme Sovereign of all Things, pointing to Heaven, and endeavouring in the best Manner we were able, to signify to them that he was Almighty, that he had made all Things, that he caus'd the Earth to produce it's Fruits to prosper, and the Growth of it, which maintain'd them to thrive; but this being only by Signs, they did not understand us, and we labour'd in vain.

The

in  
Th  
Wom  
all be  
Thro  
were  
Word  
Ring,  
that  
after  
ceiv'd  
Warr  
conclu  
Bits o  
The  
that h  
had k  
After  
them  
to po  
which  
Bread  
out th  
in Poli  
which  
who w  
Tha  
my ret  
Enemi  
expect  
the N  
Fire A  
either  
Wome  
ter, w  
of Ti

The 18th, we were surpriz'd to see several Women come into our Cottage, their Faces all besmear'd with Earth, and they set up their Throats, singing several Songs as loud as they were able, whereof we understood not one Word. That done, they fell a Dancing in a Ring, and we could not tell, what to think of that Rejoicing, which lasted full three Hours; after which we were inform'd, they had receiv'd Advice of the Victory obtain'd by their Warriors over their Enemies. The Dance concluded, those in the Cottage gave some Bits of Tabacco to those without.

May 1687.  
Women re-  
joice at  
Victory.

The same Day, about Noon, we saw him that had brought the News, who affirm'd they had kill'd at least Forty of their Enemies. After the Rejoicing, all the Women apply'd themselves to make ready their Provisions, some to pound *Indian* Corn, others to boil Meal, which they call *Grouller*, and others to bake Bread, to carry to the Warriors. They all set out the 19th to meet them, and we thought it in Policy convenient to send Meat to our Men which was done by the *French* Man of *Provence*, who went with the Women.

That same Day, at Night, the Victorious Army return'd, and we were inform'd, that their Enemies, whom they call *Cannohatino*, had expected them boldly, but that having heard the Noise, and felt the Effects of our Mens Fire Arms, they all fled, so that the *Cenis* had either kill'd or taken Forty Eight Men and Women. They had slain several of the latter, who fled to the Tops of Trees, for want of Time to make their Escape otherwise; so that

Account  
of the Bat-  
tle fought  
by the Ce-  
nis.

*May 1687**Barbarity  
of the Men  
towards a  
Woman  
taken.*

that many more Women had perish'd than Men.

They brought Home two of those Women alive, one of whom had her Head flead for the Sake of her Hair and Skin. They gave that wretched Creature a Charge of Powder and a Ball, and sent Her home, bidding her carry that Present to her Nation, and to assure them, they should be again treated after the same Manner, that is, kill'd with Fire Arms.

*of the Wo-  
men.*

The other Woman was kept to fall a Sacrifice to the Rage and Vengeance of the Women and Maids; who having arm'd themselves with thick Stakes, sharp Pointed at the End, Conducted that Wretch to a By-Place, where each of those Furies began to torment her, sometimes with the Point of their Staff, and sometimes laying on her with all their Might. One tore off her Hair, another cut off her Finger, and every one of those outrageous Women endeavour'd to put her to some exquisite Torture, to revenge the Death of their Husbands and Kinsmen, who had been kill'd in the former Wars; so that the unfortunate Creature expected her Death Stroke, as Mercy.

*Inhumani-  
ty.*

At last, one of them gave her a Stroke with a heavy Club on the Head, and another run her Stake several Times into her Body, with which she fell down Dead on the Spot. Then they cut that miserable Victim into Morfels, and oblig'd some Slaves of that Nation, they had been long possess'd of to eat them.

*Cruel Tro-  
phies.*

Thus our Warriors return'd Triumphant from that Expedition. They spar'd none of the Prisoners they had taken, except two little Boys, and brought Home all the Skins of their Heads

Head  
and  
Th  
Chief  
tion'd  
Then  
that  
the o  
remo  
French  
their  
entert  
be dis  
ticular  
having  
Chief  
In  
very  
laid o  
the mo  
one of  
tor, or  
made  
Word  
the W  
Battle  
of the  
before  
rying  
Boys,  
said be  
being  
the He  
large R  
As t  
rior to

Heads, with the Hair, to be kept as Trophies and glorious Memorials of their Victory. *May 1687.*

The next Day all those Savages met in their Chief's Cottage, whether all the abovemention'd Heads of Hair were carry'd in State. Then they made extraordinary Rejoicings in that Cottage, whence they went to the Huts of the other Prime Men, to perform the same Ceremony. This Rejoicing lasted three Days, our *French* Companions, who had been the Cause of their Victory, being call'd to it, and highly entertain'd, after their Manner. It will not be disagreeable to the Reader, that I here particularly describe that Ceremony, which after having been perform'd in the Cottages of the Chief Men, was repeated in ours.

In the first Place, the Cottage was made very clean, adorn'd, and abundant of Mats laid on the Floor, on which the Elders, and the most considerable Persons sat; after which, one of them, who is in the Nature of an Orator, or Master of the Ceremonies stood up and made a Speech, of which we understood not a Word. Soon after that Discourse was ended, the Warriors arriv'd, who had slain any in Battle, marching in their proper Order, each of them carrying a Bow and two Arrows, and before every one of them went his Wife, carrying the Enemies Head of Hair. Two little Boys, whose Lives they had spar'd, as has been said before, one of them who was wounded being a Horseback, clos'd the Procession; at the Head whereof, was a Woman carrying a large Reed, or Cane in her Hand.

As they came up to the Orator, the Warrior took the Head of Hair his Wife had brought

*Ceremony  
of Rejoicing*

K

May 1687. brought, and presented it to him, which the laid Orator receiv'd with both his Hands, and after having held it out towards the four Quarters of the World, he laid it down on the Ground, and then took the next, performing the same Ceremony, till he had gone over them all.

When the Ceremony was ended, they serv'd up the *Sagamite*, in the Nature of Fluffy Pudding, which those Women had provided, and before any one touch'd it, the Master of the Ceremonies took some in a Vessel, which he carry'd as an Offering to those Heads of Hair. Then he lighted a Pipe of Tabacco, and blow'd the Smoke upon them. That being perform'd, they all fell to the Meat, *Bits of the Woman that had been sacrific'd, were serv'd up to the two Boys of her Nation.* They also serv'd up dry'd Tongues of their Enemies, and the whole concluded with Dancing and Singing after their Manner: After which, they went to other Cottages to repeat the same Ceremony.

There was no Talk of our Design till those Rejoycings were over, and I begn to conceive good Hopes of our Success. The two Murderers, *Teissier* and *Larcheveque*, who had both a Hand in the Death of *Monfr. de la Sale*, had promis'd to go along with us, provided *Monfr. Cavalier* would pardon them, and he had given them his Word so to do. In this Expectation we continu'd till the 25th, when our French Men, who had been at the War, repair'd to our Cottage, and we consulted about our Business.

*Hiens*



which the  
nds, and  
our Quar-  
n on the  
performing  
over them

ney serv'd  
lusty Pud-  
rided, and  
er of the  
ich he car-  
s of Hair.  
occo, and  
hat being  
Meat, Bits  
were serv'd  
also serv'd  
es, and the  
nd Singing  
they went  
fame Cere-

n till those  
o conceive  
Murderers,  
oth a Hand  
ad promis'd  
nfr. Cavalier  
given them  
ectation we  
rench Men,  
to our Cot-  
usiness.

*Hiens*

*Hiens* and others of his Gang, disapproving of our Design, represented to us such Difficulties as they look'd upon to be unsurmountable, under which we must inevitably perish, or at least be oblig'd to return to the same Place. *Hiens* told us, that for his own Part, he would not hazard his Life to return into *France*, only to have his Head chopp'd off, and perceiving we answer'd Nothing to that, but that we persisted in our Resolution. *It is requisite then*, said he, *to divide what Effects remain.*

Accordingly he laid aside, for *F. Anastasius*, *Hiens* Messieurs *Cavelier*, the Uncle and the Nephew, gives the o-  
thirty Axes, four or five Dozens of Knives, a thers what  
bout thirty Pounds of Powder and the like he pleases,  
Quantity of Ball. He gave each of the and seizes  
others two Axes, two Knives, two or three the Effects.  
Pounds of Powder, with as much Ball, and  
kept the rest. As for the Horses, he kept  
the best and left us the three least. Monsieur  
*Cavelier* ask'd him for some Strings of Beads,  
which he granted, and seiz'd upon all the late  
Monfr. *de la Sale's* Cloaths, Baggage and other  
Effects, besides above a thousand Livres in Mo-  
ney, which belong'd to the late Monfr. *le Gros*,  
who dy'd at our Dwelling of *St. Lewis*. Before  
our Departure, it was a sensible Affliction to us,  
to see that Villain walk about, in a scarlet Coat,  
with gold Galons, which had belong'd to the  
late Monfr. *de la Sale*, and which, as I have said,  
he had seiz'd.

After that, *Hiens* and his Companions with-  
drew to their own Cottage, and we resolv'd  
not to put off our Departure any longer. Ac-  
cordingly, we made ready our Horses, which  
much alarm'd the Natives, and especially the

*Mr. Ca-  
velier and  
his Company  
part from  
the others.*

May 1687



Chief of them, who said and did all he could to obstruct our Journey, promising us Wives, Plenty of Provisions, representing to us the immense Dangers, as well from Enemies, who surrounded them, as from the bad and impassable Ways and the many Woods and Rivers we were to pass. However, we were not to be moved, and only ask'd one Kindness of him, in obtaining of which, there were many Difficulties, and it was, that he would give us Guides to conduct us to *Cappa*; but at length, after much Trouble and many Promises of a good Reward, one was granted, and two others went along with him.

All Things being thus order'd for our Departure, we took Leave of our Hosts, pass'd by *Hiens's* Cottage and embrac'd him and his Companions. We ask'd him for another Horse, which he granted. He desired an Attestation in *Latin* of *Monsieur Cavalier*, that he had not been concern'd in the Murder of *Monsieur de la Sale*, which was given him, because there was no refusing of it; and we set forward without *Larcheveque* and *Mounier*, who did not keep their Word with us, but remain'd among those Barbarians, being infatuated with that Course of Libertinism they had run themselves into. Thus there were only seven of us that stuck together to return to *Canada*, viz. Father *Anastassius*, Messieurs *Cavalier* the Uncle and the Nephew, the *Sieur de Marle*, one *Teissier*, a young Man born at *Paris*, whose Name was *Bartholomew* and I, with six Horses and the three *Indians*, who were to be our Guides; a very small Number for so great an Enterprize, but we put ourselves entirely into the Hands of Divine Providence,

con-

French  
Men stay  
with the  
Indians.

Only seven  
set out for  
Canada.

Confiding in God's Mercy, which did not forsake us.

May 1687



After the first Day's Journey we incamp'd on the Bank of the River, we had left not long before, lay there that Night, and the next Day, cut down Trees to make a Sort of Bridge or Planks to pass over it; handing over our Goods from one to another, and swimming over our Horses; which Work we were frequently oblig'd to repeat, and as often as we had afterwards Occasion to pass Rivers on our Way, which we held on till the 29th, every Day meeting with some Cottage, and at last, a Hamlet or Village, into which we went, and the Indian Inhabitants told us, they were call'd *Naherdikhe*, and that they were Allies to the *Cenis*.

We barter'd with them for some Provisions, and their Chief offer'd to go with us as far as the *Affonys*, who were not farther off than about three Leagues, which he accordingly did; but it happening to rain when we came thither, and the *Affonys* having had no Notice before hand, we found but indifferent Reception.

*Naherdikhe* and *Affony*

However, we were conducted to the Chief's Cottage; the Elders had Notice given them, they resorted thither, and when our Horses were unloaded, and our Goods plac'd in a Corner of the Cottage, which the Chief had allotted us, we gave them to understand, that our Intention was to go farther, to fetch Commodities to trade with them, at which they were pleas'd. They gave us to eat, and the Elders stay'd some Part of the Evening with us, which made us somewhat Uneasy, and oblig'd us

*June 1687* to be upon our Guard; however the Night pass'd without any Disturbance.

The next Morning the Elders came to us again. They had provided Mats without the Cottage, and made Signs to us to go thither and sit down upon them, as we did, leaving two of our Company to guard the Baggage. We repeated to them what we had said the Night before, and made them some Presents of Axes, Knives, Strings of Beads and Rings. They signify'd they were sorry we would go away, and endeavour'd the best they could, to make us sensible of the same Obstacles the others had signify'd to us; but it was all in Vain; however, vve stay'd till the first of *June*, all the vvhile bartering and gathering the best Stock of Provisions vve could.

Good En-  
ertain-  
ment

The Second, vve remov'd from that Cottage, vvhether vve had some Jealousy, and vvent to another, a Quarter of a League from it, vvhether the Chief of it gave us a very good Reception, An old Woman, vvho vvvas either his Mother, or Governess of the Cottage, took particular Care of us: We vvvere first serv'd at eating, and to keep her in that good Mind, vve now and then made her some little Presents, vvhhilst she, by her Care and Kindness, spar'd our Provisions, vvvhich vvvere necessary for our Journey.

A continual Rain oblig'd us to stay there till the 13th. During our Stay, the Natives made several Feasts, to vvvhich vve vvvere always invited; and at length the Rain ceasing, vve resolv'd to set out, notwithstanding all Monsieur *Cavelier* and the Priest's Apprehensions, which we surmounted, and directed our

Course

Cour  
who  
who a  
mises  
return  
again.  
of a R

The  
freque  
much  
unload  
vent t  
whenc  
conseq  
gage o

Wh  
Horse  
we disc  
toward  
because  
selves o  
them  
gain.

The  
we pas  
that, m

The  
dispos'd  
held on  
Rivers,  
Order,  
River v  
his Com  
a wild  
try. T  
Heads

Course towards the N. E. with two *Indians*, <sup>June 1687</sup> who were to conduct us only a small Way, and who accordingly soon left us, whatsoever Promises we could make them. They departed to return Home, promising they would come to us again. We encamp'd that Night on the Bank of a Rivulet.

The 14th and 15th, we held on our Way, <sup>Bad Ways</sup> frequently meeting with Sloughs, which very much fatigued us, because we were oblig'd to unload our Horses for them to pass, and prevent their sticking in the Mire and fat Soil, whence we could not have drawn them out, and consequently we were fain to carry all our Luggage on our own Backs.

Whilst we halted about Noon, that our Horses might graze, as was usually done by us, we discover'd our two *Affony Indians* returning towards us, at which we were much rejoiced, because they had a better Notion than ourselves of the Way we were to go. We made them eat and smoke, and then set out again.

The 16th, we came to a great River, which we pass'd as we had done the first, and after that, met with very bad Ways.

The 17th, one of our Company being indispos'd, we could not set out till Noon, and held on till the 21st, crossing several Sloughs and Rivers, and then one of our *Indians* being out of Order, it oblig'd us to stay on the Bank of a River we had pass'd. The other *Indian* seeing his Comrade sick, went a Hunting, and brought a wild Goat; for there are many in that Country. The *Indians* have the Art of dressing the Heads of those Creatures, which they put upon their

June 1687



Art to kill  
Goats and  
Wild Fowl.

their own, and imitate them so exactly, that they can come very near to them, and then seldom fail of killing. The same Method they use for Turkeys and other wild Fowl, and so draw them close to themselves.

The 22d, our *Indian* being somewhat recover'd we decamp'd and proceeded along a better Way and pleasanter Country, than that we had left behind, and as we enquir'd the best we could of those our *Indians*, concerning the Neighbouring Nations and those we were going towards, among others they nam'd to us, that they call'd *Cappa*. M. *Cavelier* told us, he remember'd he had heard his late Brother Monsieur de la Sale name that Nation, and say he had seen it as he went from *Canada* towards the *Mississipi*. This put us in Hopes, that we should succeed in our Discovery.

Fine Meadows.

The 23d, being near a Village, we had been in Search of, one of our *Indians* went before, to give Notice of our Arrival. In the mean Time we cross'd most lovely Plains and Meadows, border'd with fine Groves of beautiful Trees, vvhere the Grass vvvas so high, that it hinder'd our Horses going, and we vvvere oblig'd to clear the Passage for them.

When we were within Half a League of the Village, we saw an *Indian*, mounted on a large grey Mare, coming along vvith our Native, to meet us, and were told, that Horseman vvvas the Chief of the Village, attended by some others of the same Place. As soon as that Chief came up to us, he express'd very much Kindness and Affection; we gave him to understand, that we did no Body any Harm, unless we were first attack'd. Then we made him smoke, and when

that

in

that v  
him, v  
of a R  
whilst  
ders.

Soo  
ving j  
to car  
Signs,  
and w  
thoug  
nance  
Men a  
Backs  
our Cl  
the sa

As  
Size a  
Case o  
other  
a suffi  
becau  
have  
held  
carry  
Horse  
quipa  
who  
need  
that v  
us to

As  
tage,  
sons,  
Horse  
under



that was done, he made Signs to us to follow him, which we did, till we came to the Bank of a River, where he again desir'd us to stay, whilst he went to give Notice to the Elders.

Soon after, a Number of them came, and having join'd us, signify'd, that they were come to carry us to their Village. Our *Indians* made Signs, that it was the Custom of the Country, and we must submit, and let them do as they thought fit. Tho' we were much out of Countenance at that Ceremony, seven of the prime Men among them would have us mount on their Backs or Shoulders. Monsieur *Cavelier* being our Chief, mounted first, and then the rest did the same.

*M. Cavelier and the rest carry'd on the Backs of Indians.*

As for my own Part, being of a pretty large Size and loaded with Cloaths, a Firelock, a Case of Pistols, Powder and Ball, a Kettle and other Implements, there is no Doubt but I made a sufficient Burden for him that carry'd me, and because I was taller than he and my Feet would have hung upon the Ground, two other *Indians* held them up for me; so that I had three to carry me. Other *Indians* took hold of our Horses to lead them, and in that ridiculous Equipage we arriv'd at the Village. Our Carriers, who had gone a long Quarter of a League, had need enough to rest, and we to be set down, that we might laugh in private, for it behov'd us to take Care not to do it before them.

As soon as we were come to the Chief's Cottage, where we found above two hundred Persons, who were come to see us, and that our Horses were unloaded, the Elders gave us to understand, that it was their Custom to wash Strangers

*Ceremonies at their Reception.*

*June 1687* Strangers at their first Coming ; but that we being clad, they would only wash our Faces ; which one of those Elders did, with fair Water they had in a Sort of Earthen Vessel, and he only wash'd our Forehead.

*Speeches  
made to  
them.*

After this second Ceremony, the Chief made Signs to us, to sit down on a Sort of little Scaffold, rais'd about 4 Foot above the Ground, and made of Wood and Canes, where when we were plac'd, the Chiefs of the Villages being four in Number, came and made Speeches to us, one after another. We listned to them with Patience, tho' we understood not one Word of what they said to us ; being tir'd with the Length of their Harangues, and much more with the violent Heat of the Sun, which was just over our Heads.

When the Speeches were ended, the Purport whereof, as near as we could guess, was only to assure us, that we were very welcome ; we gave them to understand, that vve vvere going into our own Country, designing to return speedily, to bring them several Sorts of Commodities and such Things as they should stand in need of.

Next, we made them the usual Presents of Axes, Knives, Strings of Beads, Needles and Pins, for their Wives, telling them, that when we return'd we would give them more.

*Their En-  
ertain-  
ments.*

We farther signify'd to them, that if they would afford us some Corn or Meal, we would give them other Things in Exchange, which they agreed to. After this they made us eat *Sagamite*, or Hasty-pudding, Bread, Beans, Pom-pions and other Things, which we had sufficient  
Need

into

Need o  
Thing  
out of  
observe  
whose  
that t  
there, t

The  
tage.  
would  
duct us  
our W  
nestly  
to the  
told W  
mis'd t  
be shor

Thu  
casion'  
befell  
Men c  
would  
had p  
how to  
a Hole  
but wa  
sieur C  
de Ma  
him, a  
drown  
hasted  
were t  
them  
the Bo

that we be-  
ur Faces ;  
air Water  
l, and he

chief made  
ittle Scaf-  
ound, and  
n we were  
g four in  
o us, one  
with Pa-  
Word of  
with the  
uch more  
which was

e Purport  
as only to  
; we gave  
oing into  
speedily,  
dities and  
in need

esents of  
edles and  
em, that  
ve them

t if they  
we would  
e, which  
de us eat  
ns, Pom-  
sufficient  
Need

Need of. Most of us having scarce eaten any Thing all that Day, some for Want, and others out of Devotion, as Monfr. *Cavelier*, who would observe the Fast of *St. John Baptist's Eve*, whose Name he bore. It is to be observ'd, that the Pompions are incomparably better there, than with us.

The 24th, the Elders met again in our Cottage. We gave them to understand, they would oblige us, in furnishing Guides to conduct us to the Village of *Cappa*, which was in our Way ; but instead of granting it, they earnestly intreated us, to stay with them and go to the Wars against their Enemies, having been told Wonders of our Firelocks, which we promis'd to do when we return'd, and that it should be shortly, and they seem'd to rest satisfy'd.

Thus our Hopes increas'd, but the Joy it occasion'd was allay'd by a dismal Accident that befell us. Monsieur *de Marle*, one of the prime Men of our Company, having Breakfasted, would needs go Bath himself in the River we had pass'd the Day before, and not knowing how to swim, he went too far and step'd into a Hole, whence he could not recover himself, but was unfortunately drowned. Young Monsieur *Cavelier*, having been told that Monsieur *de Marle* was going to Bath himself, ran after him, and coming to the River, saw he was drowning, he ran back to acquaint us: We hasted thither with a Number of *Indians*, who were there before us ; but all too late, some of them div'd, and brought him up dead from the Bottom of the Water.

Mr. de  
Marle  
drown'd.

We

June 1687

His Funeral.

We carry'd him to the Cottage, shedding many Tears, the *Indians* bore Part in our Sorrow, and we paid him the last Duties, offering up the usual Prayers; after which he was bury'd in a small Field, behind the Cottage; and whereas, during that doleful Ceremony, we pray'd, reading in our Books, particularly Monsieur *Cavelier*, the Priest and Father *Anastasi*, the *Indians* gaz'd on us with Amazement, because we talk'd, looking upon the Leaves, and we endeavour'd to give them to understand, that we pray'd to God for the dead Man, pointing up to Heaven.

Humanity  
of the In-  
dians.

We must do this Right to those good People, as to declare, that they express'd singular Humanity upon that doleful Accident, as appear'd by the sensible Testimony of their Actions, and all the Methods they us'd to let us understand how great a Share they bore in our Sorrow; which we should not have found in several Parts of *Europe*.

Indian Ceremony to  
the Dead.

During our short Stay in that Place, we observ'd a Ceremony that was perform'd by the Chief's Wife, viz. that every Morning she went to Monsieur *de Marle*'s Grave, and carry'd a little Basket of parch'd Ears of Corn to lay on it, the meaning whereof we could not understand. Before our Departure, we were inform'd, that the Villages belonging to our Hosts, being four in Number, all ally'd together were call'd, *Affony*, *Nathosos*, *Nachitos* and *Cadodaquio*.

Indian  
Nations.

On the 27th, having been inform'd by the Natives, that we should find Canoes, to pass a River that was on our Way. Father *Anastasi* and I went to see whether, what they told us

was

into

was true  
of the  
of it be  
some Ca  
ry'd us  
to see w  
Horses  
proper R  
to Mon  
of Orde  
lig'd to f  
During  
ited by  
of both  
tion, cal  
them we  
very Ever  
riors, wi  
our Cott  
shedding  
have giv  
before se  
form'd, t  
er to the  
og and  
who have  
in former  
all other  
his Nati  
the *Conis*  
them.

The 2  
Chief, th  
made him  
like to hi  
Care of

Voyage

shedding  
our Sor-  
es, offering  
was bury-  
stage; and  
emony, we  
larly Mon-  
Anastafius,  
ement, be-  
eaves, and  
stand, that  
n, pointing

good Peo-  
d singular  
nt, as ap-  
their Acti-  
to let us  
ore in our  
ound in se-

ce, we ob-  
d by the  
rning she  
, and car-  
f Corn to  
could not  
we were  
ng to our  
ly'd toge-  
chitos and

d by the  
to pass a  
Anastafius  
y told us  
was

was true. We found that River was a Branch of the same we had already pass'd, the Channel of it being pleasant and navigable, and saw some Canoes, in one of which the *Indians* carry'd us over to the other Side, whether we went to see wh<sup>t</sup> convenient Place there was for our Horses to come ashore. We found a very proper Place, and returning, made our Report to Monsieur *Cavelier*, who being then much out of Order with Pains in his Feet, we were oblig'd to stay there, till the 30th.

During that Time, vve vvere frequently visited by the *Indians*, both Old and Young, and of both Sexes, and even the Chiefs of the Nation, call'd *Janiquo*, came to see us, and with them we often convers'd in dumb Show, and every Evening the Women, attended by the Warriors, with their Bows and Arrows, resorted to our Cottage, to sing a doleful Sort of Song, shedding Tears at the same Time. This would have given us some Uneasiness, had we not before seen the same Ceremony, and been inform'd, that those Women repair in that Manner to the Chief's Cottage, to intreat him, singing and weeping, to take Revenge on those, who have kill'd their Husbands, or Relations, in former Wars, as I have observ'd before. In all other Respects, the Manners and Customs of this Nation, being much the same as those of the *Cenis*, I shall add no more concerning them.

*Janiquo Nation.*

*Doleful Entertainment.*

The 29th, at Night, we gave Notice to the Chief, that we would set out the next Day, vve made him some Presents in particular, and the like to his Wife, because she had taken special Care of us, and departed on the 30th. The Chief,

June 1687

Chief, attended by many other *Indians*, whom we found in the Cottages on our Way, went to Conduct us as far as the River, which we cross'd in Canoes, and swam over our Horses. There we took Leave of our Conductors, to whom we gave some Strings of Beads for their Wives, and their Chief would needs Conduct us to the next Village.

Cadoda-  
quo Vil-  
lage.

By the Way we came to a Cottage, where our Guide made us halt, and there they gave us to eat. Then we held on our Journey to a Village call'd *Cadodaquoio*, and were conducted to the Chief's Cottage, who receiv'd us courteously, being a Friend to him that went with us. It was requisite to unload our Horses to lie there, and we signified to the Chief, that we stood in Need of Provisions. He spoke to the Women, who brought us some Meal, which we purchased with Strings of Beads, and the Chief, who conducted us thither, took his Leave.

Having no Design to stay there any Time, we had desired the Chief to appoint some Person to guide us to the Village call'd *Cahainihoua*, which was in our Way. It happen'd by good Fortune, that there were then in that Place some Men and Women of the said Village, who were come to fetch some Wood, fit to make Bows, there being Plenty of that Sort of Trees they make them of, about the Village we were in. We signify'd our Design to them and they gave us to understand they would be glad to bear us Company. In the Conversation we had with them, they made us comprehend, that they had seen People like us, who had Firelocks and a House, and that they were acquainted with the *Coppa's*, which was very pleasing to us.

Because



ans, whom  
Way, vvent  
, which we  
our Horses.  
nductors, to  
ds for their  
ds Conduct

age, where  
e they gave  
ourney to a  
e conducted  
d us courte-  
ent with us.  
orses to lie  
ief, that we  
spoke to the  
il, which we  
nd the Chief  
s Leave.

e any Time  
nt some Per-  
Cahainihoua  
n'd by good  
h that Place  
Village, who  
Wood, fit to  
that Sort of  
he Village we  
to them and  
ould be glad  
versation we  
prehend, that  
ad Firelocks  
e acquainted  
easing to us  
Because

Because they were not to depart till two Days after, we resolv'd to stay for them. June 1687.

We observ'd, that there was a Difference between the Language of those People and the Inhabitants of the Village we were in, from that of the *Cenis*, and that they had some peculiar Ceremonies, one whereof is, that when the Women have their Terms, they leave the Company of their Husbands and withdraw into other Cottages appointed for that Purpose, which no Person is to come near, upon Pain of being reputed unclean.

*Peculiar Custom.*

Those Women have their Faces still more disfigur'd, than the others we had seen before; for they make several Streaks, or Scores on them, whereas the others had but one. They adorn themselves with little Locks of fine red Hair; which they make fast to their Ears, in the Nature of Pendants. In other Respects they are not disagreeable, and neither Women nor Maids are so ill-natur'd as to make their Lovers pine for them. They are not difficult of Access, and they soon make a Return for a small Present.

*Ornaments of Women.*

The Men wear their Hair short, like our *Capucins*, they anoint it with a Sort of Oyl, or Grease, and curl it like Snails, after which they strew on it a Sort of Down, or Lint, died red, as we do Powder, which is done when they design to be very fine, in order to appear in their Assemblies. They are very fond of their Children, and all the Way of chastising them they use, is to throw Water at them, without ever beating or giving them ill Words.

*The Men.*

The

July 1687

The *Indians* that were of the Village of *Cohainiboua* and to conduct us thither, not being ready to set out on *Wednesday* the 2d of *July*, as they had promis'd, a young *Indian* offer'd himself, saying, he would conduct us safe thither, and we set out with him, still directing our Course towards the *N. E.* We kept close along the same River we had cross'd, and found it very pleasant and navigable, the Banks of it cover'd with fine Trees of several Sorts.

We had not travell'd above a League, before our Guide gave us to understand, that he had forgot a Piece of hard dry'd Skin he had to make him Shoes, which he would go fetch and return to us, pointing to us with his Hand, which Way we were to go, and telling us we should soon come to a River.

This sudden Change in the *Indian* was somewhat surprizing and very much perplex'd us; however we held on our Way, and soon came to the River he had mention'd to us, which was very pleasant and deep. We cross'd it the next Day, on a Sort of Float, which we made with much Toil and Labour, and our Horses swam over. Some Time after we were passed, we saw the *Indians* coming, who had promised to bear us Company, and were glad to find our Float, to cross the same River, as they did, and proceeded on our Journey all together.

Plenty of  
Game.

The 4th, 5th and 6th, we did the same, crossing a very fine Country, but water'd by many Brooks, Streams and Rivers. We found Abundance of wild Goats, Turkeys and other wild Fowl, whereof our *Indians* kill'd many.

On the 6th, whilst we halted on the Bank of a River to eat, we heard the Tingling of some small

inn  
small  
an *Ind*  
adorn  
two la  
we had  
He  
gave u  
Elders  
to mee  
Mann  
Blade  
ing the  
Hav  
we disc  
toward  
ducted  
where  
Ground  
we we  
Elders  
to see u  
The  
bringin  
one wh  
dry'd,  
had be  
came a  
Loaves  
They  
Oven,  
were C  
stay'd v  
ingenio  
our Sig  
vve had  
us all v

small Bells; which making us look about, we spy'd *July 1687*  
 an *Indian* with a naked Sword-Blade in his Hand, adorned with Feathers of several Colours, and two large Hawks Bells, that occasion'd the Noise we had heard. 

He made Signs for us to come to him, and gave us to understand, that he was sent by the Elders of the Village, whither we were going, to meet us, caressing us after an extraordinary Manner. I observ'd that it was a Spanish Blade he had, and that he took Pleasure in ringing the Hawks Bells.

Having travell'd about half a League with him, we discover'd a Dozen of other *Indians* coming towards us, who made very much of and conducted us to the Village, to the Chief's Cottage, where we found dry'd Bear-Skins laid on the Ground, and they made us sit on them, where we were treated with Batables, as were the Elders after us, and a Throng of Women came to see us.

*Kind Reception.*

The 7th, the Elders came to give us a Visit, bringing us two Bullocks Hides, four Otters Skins, one white Wild-Goat's Skin, all of them vvell dry'd, and 4 Bows, in Return for the Present we had before made them. The Chief and another came again some Time after, bringing two Loaves, the finest and the best we had yet seen. They look'd as if they had been bak'd in an Oven, and yet we had not observ'd, that there were Ovens among any of them. That Chief stay'd with us some Hours, he seem'd to be very ingenious and discreet, and easily understood our Signs, which vvere most of the Language we had. Having order'd a little Boy to bring us all we had Occasion for, he vvithdrevv.

*Presents.*

L

Tovvards

July 1687

The Cere-  
mony of  
the Pipe.

Towards the Evening, we were entertain'd with a Ceremony we had not seen before. A Company of Elders, attended by some young Men and Women came to our Cottage in a Body, singing as loud as they could roar. The foremost of them had a *Calumet*, so they call a very long Sort of Tabacco Pipe, adorn'd with several Sorts of Feathers. When they had sung a vvhile, before our Cottage, they enter'd it, still singing on, for about a Quarter of an Hour. After that, they took Monsieur *Cavelier* the Priest, as being our Chief, led him in solemn Manner out of the Cottage, supporting him under the Arms. When they were come to a Place they had prepared, one of them laid a great Handful of Grass on his Feet, two others brought fair Water in an Earthen Dish, with which they wash'd his Face, and then made him sit down on a Skin, provided for that Purpose.

When Monsieur *Cavelier* was seated, the Elders took their Places, sitting round about him, and the Master of the Ceremonies fix'd in the Ground two little wooden Forks, and having laid a Stick across them, all being painted red, he placed on them a Bullock's Hide, dried, a Goat's Skin over that, and then laid the Pipe thereon.

The Song was begun again, the Women mixing in the Chorus, and the Concert was heightened by great hollow Calabashes or Gourds, in which there were large Gravel Stones, to make a Noise, the *Indians* striking on them by Measure, to answer the Tone of the Choir; and the pleasantest of all was, that one of the *Indians* plac'd himself behind Monsieur *Cavelier* to hold him

in  
him u  
dandl  
answe  
The  
Maste  
the on  
the ot  
the wo  
of the  
on eac  
ture, t  
Legs  
same N  
*Cavelier*  
upperm  
Whi  
the Eld  
Part o  
his Hai  
Time,  
of its  
in that  
knowin  
signify  
him to  
of the  
under t  
Cottage  
This wa  
*Indians*  
that son  
In the  
*Cavelier*  
tage, w  
sit down  
the Cere

July 1687

entertain'd  
re. A Com-  
pung Men  
n a Body,

The fore-  
call a very  
with several  
ad sung a  
er'd it, still  
an Hour.  
avelier the  
a in solemn  
orting him  
come to a  
them laid a  
two others  
Dish, with  
a made him  
r that Pur-

ed, the El-  
ound about  
monies fix'd  
Forks, and  
being paint-  
eck's Hide,  
then laid

ne Women  
concert was  
or Gourds,  
Stones, to  
on them by  
Choir; and  
the Indians  
lier to hold  
him

him up, whilst at the same Time he Shook and dandled him from Side to Side, the Motion answering to the Musick.

That Concert was scarce ended, when the Master of the Ceremonies brought two Maids, the one having in her Hand a Sort of Collar, and the other an Otter's Skin, which they plac'd on the wooden Forks abovemention'd, at the Ends of the Pipe. Then he made them sit down, on each Side of Monsieur *Cavelier*, in such a Posture, that they look'd one upon the other, their Legs extended and intermix'd, on which the same Master of the Ceremonies laid Monsieur *Cavelier's* Legs, in such Manner, that they lay uppermost and across those of the two Maids.

Whilst this Action was performing, one of the Elders made fast a dy'd Feather to the back Part of Monsieur *Cavelier's* Head, tying it to his Hair. The Singing still continu'd all that Time, so that Monsieur *Cavelier* grown weary of its Tediousness, and asham'd to see himself in that Posture between two Maids, without knowing to what Purpose, made Signs to us to signify the same to the Chief, and having given him to understand, that he was not well, two of the *Indians* immediately took hold of him under the Arms, conducted him back to the Cottage and made Signs to him to take his Rest. This was about Nine in the Evening, and the *Indians* spent all the Night in Singing, insomuch that some of them could hold out no longer.

In the Morning they return'd to Monsieur *Cavelier*, conducted him again out of the Cottage, with the same Ceremony and made him sit down, still singing on. Then the Master of the Ceremonies took the Pipe, which he fill'd

*July 1687* with Tabacco, lighted and offered it to Monsieur *Cavelier*, but drawing back and advancing six Times before he gave it him. Having at last put it into his Hands, Monsieur *Cavelier* made as if he had smok'd and return'd it to them. Then they made us all smoke round, and every one of them whiff'd in his Turn, the Musick still continuing.

About Nine in the Morning, the Sun growing very hot, and Monsieur *Cavelier* being bare Headed, made Signs that it did him Harm. Then at last they gave over singing, and conducted him back into the Cottage, took the Pipe, put it into a Case, made of a Wild-Goat's Skin, with the two wooden Forks and the red Stick that lay across them, all which one of the Elders offer'd to Monsieur *Cavelier*, assuring him that he might pass thro' all the Nations that were ally'd to them by Virtue of that Token of Peace, and should be every where well receiv'd. This was the first Place where we saw the *Calumet*, or Pipe of Peace, having no Knowledge of it before, as some have writ. This Nation is call'd *Cabaynohoua*.

*Cabaynohoua Nation.*

*Indians expect Pre-sents.*

This Sort of Ceremonies being never perform'd among the *Indians* without the Expectation of receiving some Present; and we having besides observ'd, that some of them had withdrawn themselves, with Tokens of Dissatisfaction, perhaps because we had interrupted their Ceremony, we thought it convenient to give them something more, and I was appointed to carry them an Ax, four Knives and some Strings of Beads, with which they were satisfied.

*We*



t to Mon-  
advancing  
Having at  
r Cavalier  
rn'd it to  
oke round,  
Turn, the

Sun grow-  
being bare  
him Harm.  
, and con-  
k the Pipe,  
oat's Skin,  
e red Stick  
e of the El-  
ffuring him  
ations that  
t Token of  
ll receiv'd.  
w the Calu-  
nowledge of  
Nation is

never per-  
e Expecta-  
we having  
had with-  
f Dissatis-  
interrupted  
venient to  
s appoint-  
s and some  
were satisf-

We afterwards shew'd them an Experiment *July, 1687*  
of our Arms, the Noise and Fire whereof  
frighted them. They earnestly press'd us to  
stay with them, offering us Wives and whatso-  
ever else we should want. To be the better  
quit of them, we promis'd to return, saying we  
were going to fetch Commodities, Arms and  
Tools, which we stood in Need of, that we  
might afterwards stay with them.

The 9th and 10th were spent in Visits, and  
we were inform'd by one of the Indians that we  
were not far from a great River, which he de-  
scrib'd with a Stick on the Sand, and shew'd it  
had two Branches, at the same Time pronoun-  
cing the Word *Cappa*, which, as I have said, is  
a Nation near the *Mississipi*. We then made no  
longer Question, that we were near what we  
had been so long looking after. We entreated  
the Elders to appoint some Men to conduct us,  
promising to reward them well, which they  
granted, and we set out the 11th, to the great  
Sorrow of those good People, who had enter-  
tain'd us so courteously.

We travell'd several different Ways, which  
we could never have found, had we wanted  
Guides, and so proceeded till on the 12th, one of  
our Guides pretended to be sick, and made  
Signs that he would go back; but observing,  
that we seem'd to be no Way concern'd, which  
we did on Purpose, he consulted with his Com-  
panion, and then came to tell us, he was re-  
cover'd. We made him eat and smoke, and  
continued our Journey the 13th, finding the  
Way very bad and difficult.

*The Four-  
ney profe-  
cuted.*



and their Hair platted with Ribbons, a gold Chain about their Neck, Bracelets of the same and Pendants of Emeralds in their Ears. They could well enough like the Behaviour and Company of the French, but that the jealous Temper of the Men obstructs them: There being a Picture of *Philip King of Spain*, now reigning, aboard the Ship in which my Friend was, who gave me this Account, the People swarm'd aboard to see it, they were never satisfy'd with gazing at it, and there was a most magnificent Festival kept in the Town, on Account of the Birth of the Prince of *Asturias*.

They understand Trade very well, but are sloathful and averse to Labour, fond of State and Ease. They wear great Strings of Beads about their Necks, their Houses are full of Pictures and Images of Devotion, decently furnish'd with *Purceline* and *China* Goods. The Churches are magnificently adorned with Plate.

All Strangers are forbid Trading there, yet some come by Stealth and deal Underhand, by Means of Presents made to such Persons as can favour them. If those *Mulattoes* call themselves white, it is only to honour themselves and by Way of Distinction from their Slaves, who are all Blacks, and having got much Money by their Labour, ransom themselves and sometimes become considerable Merchants.

The City of *Mexico*, Capital of the Country and the Residence of the Vice-roy, is about eighty Leagues distant from *Veracruz*, to the Westward, the Way to it very bad and ill furnish'd with Provisions. That Country would be better in some Parts, were it well cultivated

bons, a gold  
s of the same  
ir Ears. They  
our and Com-  
jealous Tem-  
There being a  
ow reigning,  
end was, who  
e swarm'd a-  
satisfy'd with  
t magnificent  
ccount of the

well, but are  
fond of State  
ings of Beads  
re full of Pic-  
on, decently  
China Goods.  
tly adorned

ng there, yet  
Underhand,  
such Persons  
Mulattoes call  
ur themselves  
their Slaves,  
much Money  
ves and some-  
nts.

the Country  
oy, is about  
acruz, to the  
bad and ill  
at Country  
were it well  
cultivated

cultivated by the Inhabitants. They sow but little of our Wheat, and are satisfied with *Indian* Corn and *Cassabi* Root, whereof they make Cakes, as is practis'd in the Islands. Their Trees and Fruits are the same as in other hot Countries. About the Town of *Veracruz*, there are Bushes of a Sort of Thorn, without Leaves, among which grows an extraordinary Plant; for tho' it has but a small Stem, it shoots out Leaves of a Cabbage Green, as thick as a Man's Finger, which grow out, one at the End of another, in the Shape of a Racket, and the Plant itself is so call'd. From those Leaves there grows out a Sort of red Figs, very juicy, with Seeds like those of the Pomgranate; the Juice is of a Violet Colour, but unfavoury. There is a Sort of Flies that cleave to it and are so fond of the Taste of the Fruit, that they burst and drop down dead. They are carefully gather'd and dry'd, and are the Scarlet Dye, call'd *Cochinilla*, which is brought into *Europe*, and makes that beautiful Colour. The Birds and Beasts are much the same as in other Countries of *America*. There is a Sort of Bird, all red, which for that Reason is call'd the *Cardinal*; this they often tame and teach to sing like a *Canary* Bird. This is what I have been told concerning the Town of *Veracruz*.

As for the *Havana*, a Town and Port no less famous, in the Island of *Cuba*, belonging as well as the other to the Crown of *Spain*, it stands towards the Western End, and on the North Side of that Island, almost under the Tropick of *Cancer*, and about four or five hundred Leagues on this Side of *Veracruz*. It is large and beautiful

*Havana.*

ful; the Port good, secur'd by two Forts on the two Sides, and Brass Guns, from twenty four to thirty six Pounders, the Entrance so narrow, that only one Vessel can go in at once. The Town is compass'd by a good Wall, fortify'd with five Bastions, furnish'd with Cannon. The Streets are all as strait as a Line, and level, the Houses very handsome, but ill furnish'd. In the Midst of it is a fine Square, the Buildings about all uniform. The Churches are magnificent, and enrich'd with Gold and Silver, Lamps, Candlesticks, and Ornaments for the Altars. There are some Lamps curiously wrought, which weigh two hundred Marks of Silver, each Mark being half a Pound. The Revenue of the Bishoprick amounts to fifty thousand Crowns, and he who enjoy'd it in the Year 1703, as I was inform'd by my Friend, who gave me this Account of what he had seen, was the greatest Ornament of that City, for his Virtues and Charity, being satisfy'd with Necessaries, and spending all the rest upon the Poor, and in repairing decay'd Churches. Tho' Strangers are prohibited to trade there, yet it is easier carried on than at *Veracruz*. The Inhabitants are more familiar; the Women have more Liberty, yet they do not go Abroad without their Veils to wrap and hide them. Many of them speak *French*, and dress after the *French* Fashion, and some of our Nation have settled themselves there. When my Friend was there, a magnificent Festival was celebrated for fifteen Days successively, in Honour of K. Philip the Fifth, and Monsieur *du Cassé* being then there, with his Squadron, the City desir'd him to join with them. To that Purpose, he set

in  
ashore  
Mart  
was m  
where  
there,  
tho' i  
savory  
We  
famou  
cause i  
in Reg  
to be  
penda  
Way,  
the C  
there,  
ther,  
*Veracr*  
Corres  
the Se  
But  
the Co  
Charg  
dence  
vance  
ment  
from J  
There  
wise t  
Blessi  
former  
for wh  
for st  
Settle  
tagiou  
pagar

ashore five hundred Men, who perform'd the Martial Exercise in the great Square, which was much admir'd. The *Havana* is the Place, where the Galeons meet. Provisions are dear there, especially Bread ; but the Wine is not, tho' it is good. Fish and Flesh there are unsavory. The Inhabitants are *Spaniards*.

We have thought fit to describe those two famous Ports of the Bay of *Mexico*, as well because it has not been so exactly done before, as in Regard that the Settlement which is going to be made in *Louisiana*, may have some Dependance on them ; for the *Havana* lying in the Way, those who perform the Voyage may have the Conveniency of taking in Refreshments there, of putting in for Shelter in foul Weather, and of careening or refitting. As for the *Veracruz*, tho' farther out of the Way, the Correspondence there may be advantagious for the Securing of the Colony of *Louisiana*.

But how can that fail of succeeding, under the Conduct of Monsieur *Crozat*, who has the Charge of that Enterprize, and whom Providence seems to have in a Manner engag'd to advance in Wealth and Honour, to the Amazement of the World, and yet free from Envy, from Jealousy, and from any Sort of Complaints. There is therefore no Reason to presage otherwise than well of the Event of this Affair ; the Blessings God has pour'd down upon all his former Undertakings, seem to be a Security for what is to follow. There is Reason to hope for still greater Blessings on this Project of a Settlement in *Louisiana*, as being equally advantagious to Religion and the State ; for the propagating of the Knowledge and Service of God



among an infinite Number of Savages, by Means of the Missioners, who are to be sent to and maintain'd in those vast Countries; the Planting of the Faith in that new World, only the Name whereof is known to us, and the Reducing of it to be a Christian and a *French Province*, under the Dominion of our August Monarch, and to the eternal Memory of his Reign, will be the Consequences and the Fruits of Monsieur Crozat's Care and Expence, the Glory of his Enterprize, the Security of the large Fortune he has made in this Life, and what is rare among such rich Men, the Earnest of much better in the Next. Heaven grant our Hopes and Wishes may be answer'd.

*I am, &c.*

---

*The Letters Patent granted by the King of France to M. Crozat.*

**L**OUIS, by the Grace of God, King of *France and Navarre* : To all who shall see these present Letters, Greeting. The Care we have always had to procure the Welfare and Advantage of our Subjects, having induced us, notwithstanding the almost continual Wars which we have been obliged to support from the Beginning of our Reign, to seek for all possible Opportunities of enlarging and extending the Trade of our American Colonies, *We did in the Year 1683 give our Orders*

in  
to un  
Land  
Amer  
co :  
comm  
enough  
might  
of M  
oblige  
to gi  
and n  
prefer  
very  
which  
Caroli  
the W  
in Eu  
till n  
the A  
from  
are c  
Enga  
have  
the I  
the I  
tries  
Prov  
there  
Com  
our  
Neces  
great  
be b  
chan  
but  
600

to undertake a Discovery of the Countries and Lands which are situated in the Northern Part of America, between New France and New Mexico : And the *Sieur de la Sile*, to whom we committed that Enterprize, having had Success enough to confirm a Belief that a Communication might be settled from New France to the Gulph of Mexico by Means of large Rivers ; This obliged us immediately after the Peace of Ryswick to give Orders for the establishing a Colony there, and maintaining a Garrison which has kept and preserved the Possession, we had taken in the very Year 1683 of the Lands, Coasts and Islands which are situated in the Gulph of Mexico, between Carolina on the East, and Old and New Mexico on the West. But a new War having broke out in Europe shortly after, there was no Possibility, till now, of reaping from that new Colony the Advantages that might have been expected from thence, because the private Men, who are concerned in the Sea Trade, were all under Engagements with other Colonies, which they have been obliged to follow : And whereas upon the Information we have received concerning the Disposition and Situation of the said Countries known at present by the Name of the Province *la Louisiana*, we are of Opinion that there may be established therein a considerable Commerce, so much the more advantageous to our Kingdom in that there has hitherto been a Necessity of fetching from Foreigners the greatest Part of the Commodities which may be brought from thence, and because in Exchange thereof we need carry thither nothing but Commodities of the Growth and Manufacture of our own Kingdom : we have resolv-

ed to grant the Commerce of the Country of *Louisiana* to the *Sieur Anthony Crozat* our Councillor, Secretary of the Household, Crown and Revenue, to whom we entrust the Execution of this Project. We are the more readily inclined hereunto, because his Zeal and the singular Knowledge he has acquired in maritime Commerce, encourage us to hope for as good Success as he has hitherto had in the divers and sundry Enterprizes he has gone upon, and which have procured to our Kingdom great Quantities of Gold and Silver in such Conjunctions as have rendred them very welcome to us.

FOR THESE REASONS being desirous to shew our Favour to him, and to regulate the Conditions upon which we mean to grant him the said Commerce, after having deliberated this Affair in our Council, Of our certain Knowledge, full Power and Royal Authority, We by these Presents signed by our Hand, have appointed and do appoint the said *Sieur Crozat* solely to carry on a Trade in all the Lands possessed by Us, and bounded by New Mexico, and by the Lands of the English of Carolina, all the Establishment, Ports, Havens, Rivers, and principally the Port and Haven of the *Isle Dauphine*, heretofore called *Massacre*; the River of *St. Lewis*, heretofore called *Mississipi*, from the Edge of the Sea as far as the *Illinois*; together with the River of *St. Philip*, heretofore called the *Missourys*, and of *St. Jerome*, heretofore called *Orabache*, with all the Countries, Territories, Lakes within Land, and the Rivers which fall directly or indirectly into that Part of the River of *St. Lewis*.

The ARTICLES.

I. Our Pleasure is, that all the aforesaid Lands, Countries Streams, Rivers and Islands be and remain comprised under the Name of *The Government of Louisiana, which shall be dependant upon the General Government of New France*, to which it is subordinate ; and further, that all the Lands which we possess from the *Illinois* be united, so far as Occasion requires, to the General Government of *New France*, and become Part thereof, reserving however to Ourselves the Liberty of enlarging as We shall think fit the Extent of the Government of the said Country of *Louisiana*.

II. We grant to the said *Sieur Crozat* for Fifteen successive Years, to be reckon'd from the Day of Inrolling these presents, a Right and Power to transport all Sorts of Goods and Merchandize from *France* into the said Country of *Louisiana*, and to traffick thither as he shall think fit. We forbid all and every Person and Persons, Company and Companies of what Quality or Condition soever, and under any Pretence whatever, to trade thither, under Penalty of Confiscation of Goods, Ships, and other more severe Punishments, as Occasion shall require ; for this Purpose we order our Governours and other Officers commanding our Troops in the said Country forcibly to abet, aid and assist the Directors and Agents of the said *Sieur Crozat*.

III. We permit him to search for, open and dig all Sorts of Mines, Veins and Minerals throughout the whole Extent of the said Country of *Louisiana*, and to transport the Profits thereof into any Port of *France* during the said

Fifteen Years; and we grant in Perpetuity to him, his Heirs, and others claiming under him or them, the Property of, in and to the Mines, Veins and Minerals which he shall bring to bear, paying us, in Lieu of all Claim, the Fifth Part of the Gold and Silver which the said *Sieur Crozat* shall cause to be transported to France at his own Charges into what Port he pleases, (of which Fifth we will run the Risque of the Sea and of War,) and the Tenth Part of what Effects he shall draw from the other Mines, Veins and Minerals, which Tenth he shall transfer and convey to our Magazines in the said Country of *Louisiana*.

We likewise permit him to search for precious Stones and Pearls, paying us the Fifth Part in the same Manner as is mention'd for the Gold and Silver.

We will that the said *Sieur Crozat*, his Heirs, or those claiming under him or them the perpetual Right, shall forfeit the Propriety of the said Mines, Veins and Minerals, if they discontinue the Work during three Years, and that in such Case the said Mines, Veins and Minerals shall be fully reunited to our Domaine, by Virtue of this present Article, without the Formality of any Process of Law, but only an Ordinance of Re-union from the Subdelegate of the Intendant of *New France*, who shall be in the said Country, nor do we mean that the said Penalty of Forfeiture in Default of working for three Years, be reputed a Commnatory Penalty.

IV. The said *Sieur Crozat* may vend all such Merchandize, Goods, Wares, Commodities, Arms, and Ammunition as he shall have caused

to be transported into the said Country and Government of *Louisiana*, as well to the *French*, as *Savages* who are or shall be there settled; nor shall any Person or Persons under any Pretence whatsoever be capable of doing the like without his Leave expressed in Writing.

V. He may purchase in the said Country, all Sorts of Furs, Skins, Leather, Wool, and other Commodities and Effects of the said Country, and transport them to *France* during the said Fifteen Years: And as our Intention is to favour, as much as we can, our Inhabitants of *New France*. And to hinder the Lessening of their Trade, we forbid him Trafficking for Castor in the said Country under any Pretence whatsoever; nor to Convey any from thence into our Kingdom or Foreign Countries.

VI. We Grant to the *Sieur Crozat*, his Heirs or those claiming under him or them, the Property of, in and to all Settlements and Manufactories which he shall erect or set up in the said Country for Silk, Indigo, Wooll, Leather, Mines, Veins and Minerals, as likewise the Property of, in and to the Lands which he shall cause to be Cultivated, with the Mansions, Mills, and Structures which he shall cause to be built thereon, taking Grants thereof from Us, which Grants he shall obtain upon the Verbal Process and Opinion of our Governor and of the Sub-delegate of the Intendant of *New France* in the said Country, to be by him Reported unto Us.

We will that the said *Sieur Crozat*, his Heirs, or those claiming under him or them, shall keep in Repair the said Settlements, Manufactures, Lands and Mills; and in Default thereof during the Space of three Years, he and they shall



Forfeit the same, and the said Settlements, Manufactories, Lands and Mills shall be Re-united to our Domaine fully and amply, and in the same Manner as is mentioned above in the Third Article concerning the Mines, Veins and Minerals.

VII. Our Edicts, Ordinances and Customs, and the Usages of the Mayoralty and Shreevalty of *Paris*, shall be observed for Laws and Customs in the said Country of *Louisiana*.

VIII. The said *Sieur Crozat* shall be oblig'd to send to the said Country of *Louisiana* Two Ships every Year, which he shall cause to set out in the proper Season, in each of which Ships he shall cause to be imbark'd, without paying any Freight, 25 Tun of Viçuals, Effects, and necessary Ammunition, for the Maintenance of the Garrison and Forts of the *Louisiana*; and in Case we should cause to be laden above the said 25 Tun in each Ship, we consent to pay the Freight to the said *Sieur Crozat*, at the common Merchantile Rates.

He shall be oblig'd to convey our Officers of *Louisiana* in the Ships which he shall send thither, and to furnish them with Subsistence and a Captain's Table for 30 Sols per Day, which we will cause to be paid for each.

He shall likewise give Passage in the said Ships, to the Soldiers, which we shall please to send to the said Country; and we will cause the necessary Provisions for their Subsistence to be furnish'd to him, or will pay him for them at the same Price as is paid to the Purveyor-General of our Marine.

He shall be furthermore oblig'd to send on Board each Ship, which he shall cause to set out for

in  
for th  
men,  
IX  
Mag  
Weig  
shall  
us, a  
Privi  
X.  
said  
try  
of Ex  
that  
gage  
reck  
their  
islan  
tion  
serv  
a lo  
as w  
X  
whi  
from  
on  
and  
int  
tie  
sha  
ho  
th  
an  
mi  
Fo  
th  
w

for the said Country, Ten young Men or Women, at his own Election.

IX. We will cause to be deliver'd out of our Magazines to the said *Sieur Crozat*, 10000 Weight of Gunpowder every Year, which he shall pay us for at the Price that it shall cost us, and this for so long Time as the present Privilege shall last.

X. The Wares and Merchandize which the said *Sieur Crozat* shall consign to the said Country of *Louisiana* shall be exempt from all Duties of Exportation, laid or to be laid, on Condition, that his Directors, Deputies or Clerks, shall engage to give within the Space of a Year, to be reckon'd from the Date thereof, a Certificate of their Unlading in the said Country of *Louisiana*; under Penalty, in Case of Contravention, to pay the Quadruple of the Duties, reserving to our selves the Power of giving him a longer Respite in such Cases and Occurrences as we shall think proper.

XI. And as for the Goods and Merchandize, which the *Sieur Crozat* shall cause to be brought from the said Country of *Louisiana*, and upon his Account, into the Ports of our Kingdom, and shall afterwards cause to be transported into Foreign Countries, they shall pay no Duties either of Importation or Exportation, and shall be deposited in the Custom-House, Warehouses of Ports where they shall arrive, until they be taken away; and when the Deputies and Clerks of the said *Sieur Crozat* shall be minded to cause them to be transported in Foreign Countries, either by Sea or Land, they shall be oblig'd to give Security to bring within a certain Time, a Certificate from the  
last

last Office, containing what they Exported there, and another Certificate of their unloading in Foreign Countries.

XII. In Case the said *Sieur Crozat* be obliged, for the furtherance of his Commerce to fetch from Foreign Countries some Goods and Merchandize of Foreign Manufacture, in order to **T R A N S P O R T** them into the said Country of *Louisiana*. He shall make Us Acquainted therewith, and lay before Us States thereof; upon which we, if we think fit, will Grant him our Particular Permission with Exemptions from all Duties of Importation and Exportation, Provided the said Goods and Merchandize be Deposited afterwards in our Custom-house Ware-houses until they be Laden in the Ships of the said *Sieur Crozat*, who shall be obliged to bring in one Year, to be reckoned from the Day of the Date hereof, a Certificate of their unloading in the said Country of *Louisiana*, under Penalty, in Case of Contravention, to pay quadruple the Duties: Reserving to our selves, in like Manner, the Liberty of granting to the said *Sieur Crozat*, a longer Respite, if it be necessary.

XIII. The Feluccaes, Canoes, and other Vessels belonging to us, and which are in the said Country of *Louisiana*, shall serve for loading, unloading and transporting the Effects of the said *Sieur Crozat*, who shall be bound to keep them in good Condition, and after the Expiration of the said Fifteen Years shall restore them, or a like Number of equal Bulk and Goodness, to our Governor in the said Country.

XIV. If for the Cultures and Plantations which the said *Sieur Crozat* is minded to make

into  
he find  
Country  
every  
Coast  
Guinea  
Blacks  
Louisiana  
and P  
whatso  
for the  
Sieur C  
XV  
said J  
France  
turn  
Confir  
villedg  
XV  
bliged  
Years  
the G  
Durin  
of thi  
may i  
Office  
ficers  
of the  
Given  
Day  
And

SIG  
P

he finds it proper to have Blacks in the said Country of the *Louisiana*, he may send a Ship every Year to trade for them directly upon the Coast of *Guinea*, taking Permission from the *Guinea* Company so to do, he may sell those Blacks, to the Inhabitants of the Colony of *Louisiana*; and we forbid all other Companies and Persons whatsoever, under any Pretence whatsoever, to introduce Blacks or Traffick for them in the said Country, nor shall the said *Sieur Crozat* carry any Blacks else where.

XV. He shall not send any Ships into the said Country of *Louisiana* but directly from *France*, and he shall Cause the said Ships to Return thither again; the whole under Pain of Confiscation and Forfeiture of the Present Priviledge.

XVI. THE said *Sieur Crozat* shall be obliged, after the Expiration of the first nine Years of this Grant, to Pay the Officers and the Garrison which shall be in the said Country During the Six last Years of the Continuance of this Present Priviledge: The said *Sieur Crozat* may in that Time propose and nominate the Officers, as Vacancies shall fall, and such Officers, shall be Confirmed by us, if we approve of them.

Given at FONTAINBLEAU the Fourteenth Day of September in the Year of Grace 1712. And of Our Reign the 70th.

SIGNED LOUIS

By the KING

PHELIPEAUX, &c.

Aug. 1687

to land, and sometimes to travel over miry Lands, where we sunk up half way the Leg; other Times over burning Sands, which scorch'd our Feet, having no Shoes, or else over Splinters of Wood, which ran into the Soles of our Feet, and when we were come to the resting Place, we were to provide Fuel to dress our Meat, and provide all Things for our *Indians*, who would not have done so much as go fetch a Cup of Water, tho' we were on the Bank of the River, and yet we were happy enough in having them.

We proceeded on, continually undergoing the same Toil, till the Seventh, when, we saw the first Bullock, we had met on our Way, since our coming among the *Accancea's*. The *Indians*, who had a great Mind to eat Flesh, made a Sign to me, to go kill it. I pursu'd and Shot, but it did not fall, the *Indians* ran after, kill'd, and came to tell us it must be parch'd, or dry'd, which was accordingly done. I must here take Notice of a Ceremony our *Indians* perform'd, when they came near the Bullock, before they flead him.

Ceremony  
as dressing  
a Bullock.

In the first Place, they adorn'd his Head with some Swans and Bustards Down, dy'd red, and put some Tabacco into his Nostrils, and between the Clefts of the Hoofs. When they had flead him, they cut out the Tongue, and put a Bit of Tabacco into its Place; then they stuck two Wooden Forks into the Ground, laid a Stick across them, on vvhich they plac'd several Slices of the Flesh, in the Nature of an Offering. The Ceremony being ended, vve parch'd or dry'd the best Parts of the Beast and proceeded on our Journey.

The

into

The  
Very hi  
and W  
furnish  
dies, o  
till the  
locks,  
them, a

The  
River, c  
Country  
That is  
dinary  
Our *Ind*  
some Ta  
on Fork  
pos'd of  
some oth  
ple, one

There  
they Fa  
as they  
Arms, c  
slimy So  
that Day  
of the C  
they we  
had Wa  
The Occ  
us to un  
Success  
locks.

We h  
*Indians*  
within a  
ashore to

The 9th, we found the Banks of the River very high, and the Earth of them Yellow, Red and White, and thither the Natives came to furnish themselves with it, to adorn their Bodies, on Festival Days. We held on our Way till the 14th, when we met a Herd of Bulls, whereof we kill'd five, dry'd Part of them, and proceeded till the 18th.

Aug. 1667  
Banks of  
several Col-  
ours.

The 19th, we came to the Mouth of the River, call'd *Houabache*, said to come from the Country of the *Iroquois*, towards *New England*. That is a very fine River, its Water extraordinary clear, and the Current of it, gentle. Our *Indians* offer'd up to it, by Way of Sacrifice, some Tabacco and Beef Steaks, which they fix'd on Forks, and left them on the Bank, to be dispos'd of as the River thought fit. We observ'd some other Superstitions among those poor People, one whereof was as follows.

Houaba-  
che River.

*Ohio R.*

There were some certain Days, on which they Fasted, and we knew them, when as soon as they awak'd, they besmear'd their Faces and Arms, or other Parts of their Bodies, with a slimy Sort of Earth, or pounded Charcoal; for that Day they did not eat till Ten or Eleven of the Clock at Night, and before they did eat they were to wipe off that Smearing, and had Water brought them for that Purpose. The Occasion of their Fasting was, as they gave us to understand, that they might have good Success in Hunting, and kill Abundance of Bulls.

Indian  
Fast.

We held on our Way till the 25th, when the *Indians* shew'd us a Spring of Salt Water, within a Musket Shot of us, and made us go ashore to view it. We observ'd the Ground

Salt Water  
Spring.



Aug. 1687



Wild Fruit.

about it was much beaten by Bullocks Feet, and it is likely they love that Salt Water. The Country about, was full of Hillocks, cover'd with Oaks and Wallnut-Trees, Abundance of Plum-Trees, almost all the Plums red and pretty good, besides great Store of other Sorts of Fruits, whose Names vve know not, and among them one shap'd like a midling Pear, with Stones in it as big as large Beans. When ripe it peels like a Peach, the Taste is indifferent good, but rather of the Sweetest.

The 27th, having discover'd a Herd of Beeves, we went ashore to kill some; I shot a Heifer, which was very good Meat, we put a Board the best of it, and held on our Way till the Evening, when we encamp'd on an Island, where we observ'd an Alteration in the Humour and Behaviour of our *Indians*. This put us under some Apprehension, and the more, for that he who was reckon'd an Hermaphrodite, told us, they intended to leave us, which oblig'd us to secure our Arms and double our Watch during the Night, for Fear they should forsake us.

Missouris River.

With that Jealousy we proceeded on our Journey the 28th and 29th, coasting along the Foot of an upright Rock, about sixty, or eighty Foot high, round which the River glides. Held on the 30th and 31st, and the first of September pass'd by the Mouth of a River call'd *Missouris*, whose Water is always thick, and to which our *Indians* did not forget to offer Sacrifice.

Figure of a pretended Monster

The 2d, we arriv'd at the Place, where the Figure is of the pretended Monster spoken of by Father *Marquet*. That Monster consists of two

scurvy

# The "Grand Tower"

† at action

into

scurvy  
a Rock  
wants  
that Re  
paid H  
Stone;  
understa  
of Virt  
above it  
to no Pe  
they sho  
Duty.  
of Moun  
the *Mi*  
*nois*.

We fo  
as well  
very gen  
is much  
about the  
fine Woo  
adorn'd  
us, to fi  
ver, by  
we all sta  
Way.

Thus w  
any long  
our *India*  
eaten som  
very ill,  
Place.

The 9th  
League ov  
into the C  
whereof v

scurvy Figures drawn in red, on the flat Side of a Rock, about ten or twelve Foot high, which wants very much of the extraordinary Height that Relation mentions. However our *Indians* paid Homage, by offering Sacrifice to that Stone; tho' we endeavour'd to give them to understand, that the said Rock had no Manner of Virtue, and that we worship'd something above it, pointing up to Heaven; but it was to no Purpose, and they made Signs to us, that they should die if they did not perform that Duty. We proceeded, coasting along a Chain of Mountains, and at length, on the 3d, left the *Mississipi*, to enter the River of the *Illinois*. Sept. 1687.

We found a great Alteration in that River, as well with Respect to its Course, which is very gentle, as to the Country about it, which is much more agreeable and beautiful than that about the great River, by Reason of the many fine Woods and Variety of Fruit its Banks are adorn'd with. It was a very great Comfort to us, to find so much Ease in going up that River, by Reason of its gentle Stream, so that we all stay'd in the Canoe and made much more Way.

Thus we went on till the 8th, without stopping any longer than to kill a Bullock, and one of our *Indians*, who had a craving Stomach, having eaten some of its Suet hot and raw, was taken very ill, and died of it, as I shall mention in its Place.

Indian  
dies of eat-  
ing raw  
Suet.

The 9th, we came into a Lake, about half a League over, which we cross'd, and return'd into the Channel of the River, on the Banks whereof we found several Marks of the Natives

Sept. 1687 having been incamp'd there, when they came to fish and dry what they caught. The 10th, we cross'd another Lake, call'd *Primitichouy*, return'd to the River, and the 11th, saw *Indians* before us, incamp'd on the Bank of a River, whereupon we stop'd and made ready our Arms. In the mean Time, one of them came towards us by Land, and we put on our Canoe towards him.

Lake  
Pecora

Meeting  
with Illi-  
nois.

When that *Indian* was near, he stood gazing on us, without speaking a Word, and then drawing still nearer, we gave him to understand, that we were sent by Monsieur de la Sale, and came from him: Then he made Signs to us, to advance towards his People, whom, he went before to acquaint with what we had said to him, so that when we were come near them they fired several Shot to salute us, and we answer'd them with our Firelocks.

After that mutual Salutation, they came into our Canoe, to signify, they were glad to hear News of Monsieur de la Sale. We ask'd them, What Nation they were of; they answer'd, They were *Istineis*, of a Canton call'd *Cascaquia*. We enquir'd whether Monsieur Tonty was at Fort Lewis; they gave us to understand, that he was not, but that he was gone to the War against the *Iroquois*. They invited us Ashore, to go with them to eat of such as they had, we thank'd them, and they brought us some Gourds and Water Melons, in Exchange for which, we gave them some parch'd Flesh.

We had not by the Way taken Notice of a Canoe, in which was a Man with two Women, who, being afraid of us, had hid them-  
selves

int  
selves a  
stop am  
to us, a  
Village  
and one  
to help  
pushing  
rowing.

On Su  
in the  
bourhoo  
were m  
Bank, w  
standing  
that we  
carry th  
French M  
ans, wh  
lute us.

desir'd  
ing only  
Baggage  
rying off  
on, and  
as the M

We al  
and four  
and amo  
the late  
ask'd us,  
them, he  
left us a  
the *Cemis*  
All that  
and I, w  
were no

selves among the Reeds, but that Man seeing us <sup>Sept. 1687</sup>  
 stop among his Countrymen, took Heart, came  
 to us, and having told us, that he belong'd to a  
 Village near Fort Lewis, we set out together,  
 and one of our *Indians* went into that Canoe,  
 to help them to move, so they call the Way of  
 pushing on the Canoe with Poles instead of  
 rowing.

On Sunday, the 14th of September, about two <sup>Fort Lewis</sup>  
 in the Afternoon, we came into the Neigh- <sup>is among</sup>  
 bourhood of Fort Lewis. Drawing near, we <sup>the Illinois</sup>  
 were met by some *Indians* that were on the  
 Bank, who having view'd us well, and under-  
 standing we came from Monfr. de la Sale, and  
 that we belong'd to him, ran to the Fort to  
 carry the News, and immediately we saw a  
*French Man* come out, with a Company of *Indi-*  
*ans*, who fir'd a Volley of several Pieces, to sa-  
 lute us. Then the *French Man* drew near, and  
 desir'd us to come Ashore, which we did, leav-  
 ing only one in the Canoe, to take Care of our  
 Baggage; for the *Illinois* are very sharp at car-  
 rying off any thing they can lay their Hands  
 on, and consequently, nothing near so honest  
 as the Nations we had pass'd thro'.

We all walk'd together towards the Fort,  
 and found three *French Men* coming to meet us,  
 and among them a Clerk, who had belong'd to <sup>Arrival at</sup>  
 the late Monfr. de la Sale. They immediately <sup>Fort Lewis</sup>  
 ask'd us, where Monfr. de la Sale was, we told  
 them, he had brought us Part of the Way, and  
 left us at a Place about forty Leagues beyond  
 the *Conis*, and that he was then in good Health.  
 All that was true enough; for Monfr. *Cavelier*  
 and I, who were the Persons, that then spoke,  
 were not present at Monfr. de la Sale's Death;

Sept. 1687

he was in good Health when he left us, and I have told the Reasons we had for concealing his Death, till we came into *France*.

It is no less true, that Father *Anastafius*, and he they called *Teisier*, could have given a better Account, the one as an Eye Witness, and the other, as one of the Murderers, and they were both with us; but to avoid lying, they said Nothing. We farther told them, we had Orders to go over into *France*, to give an Account of the Discoveries made by Monsieur de la Sale, and to procure the sending of Succours.

At length, we enter'd the Fort, where we found and surpriz'd several Persons who did not expect us. All the *French* were under Arms and made several Discharges to welcome us. Monsieur de Belle Fontaine Lieutenant to Monsr. Tonty, was at the Head of them and complimented us. Then we were conducted to the Chappel, where we return'd Thanks to God, from the Bottom of our Hearts, for having preserv'd and conducted us in Safety; after which we had our Lodgings assign'd us, Monsr. Cavalier and Father *Anastafius* had one Chamber, and we were put into the Magazine, or Ware-house. All this While, the Natives came by Intervals, to fire their Pieces, to express their Joy for our Return, and for the News we brought of Monsieur de la Sale, which refresh'd our Sorrow for his Misfortune; perceiving that his Presence would have settled all Things advantageously.

The Day after our Arrival, one of the *Indians*, who had conducted us, having been sick ever since he eat the raw Beef Suet, I mention'd before, died, and his Companions took away

and

into.

and bury'd  
promis'd  
the Dead  
Relations  
Fort, dur  
Care of t  
own Hon  
As far  
dropp'd  
Somethin  
the Servic  
Authority  
Return, b  
great Co  
Cavalier,  
him. He  
Points, a  
which we  
of.

Our D  
Way to C  
the first  
we enqui  
with sever  
that Rive  
the Falls  
fully avoi  
table Ha  
Persons  
the War  
fraid.

Howev  
late Mon  
a Canoe  
to Canad  
Opportun

and bury'd him privately. We gave them the <sup>Sept. 1687</sup> promis'd Reward, and the Part belonging to the Dead Man, to be deliver'd to his Relations. They stay'd some Time in the Fort, during the which, we took extraordinary Care of them, and at last they return'd to their own Homes.

As far as we could gather by half Words dropp'd there by one or other at the Fort, Something had been done there prejudicial to the Service of Monfr. *de la Sale*, and against his Authority, and therefore some dreaded his Return, but more especially a *Jesuit* was in great Consternation. He was sick, Monsieur *Cavelier*, Father *Anastafius* and I went to visit him. He enquired very particularly of all Points, and could not conceal his Trouble, which we would not seem to take Notice of.

Our Design being to make the best of our Way to *Canada*, in Order to set out Aboard the first *French* Ships that should Sail for *France*, we enquired how we were to proceed, and met with several Difficulties. The Navigation on that River was very dangerous, by Reason of the Falls there are in it, which must be carefully avoided, unless a Man will run an inevitable Hazard of perishing. There were few Persons capable of managing that Affair, and the War with the *Iroquois* made all Men afraid.

However the *Sieur Boisfrondet*, Clerk to the late Monfr. *de la Sale*, having told us he had a Canoe, in which he design'd to go down to *Canada*, we prepared to make use of that Opportunity. Care was taken to gather Provisions

Falls in the River.



*Sept. 1687* visions for our Voyage, to get Furs to barter as we pass'd by *Micilimaquinay*. The Visits of two Chiefs of Nations, call'd *Cascaquia Pereneria* and *Cacabonanos* discover'd by the late Monsieur de la Sale, did not interrupt our Affairs, and all things being got ready, we took Leave of those we left in the Fort. Monsieur *Cavelier* writ a Letter for Monsieur *Tonty*, which he left there to be delivered to him, and we repair'd to the Lake to imbark.

*M. Cavelier, &c.  
set out and  
returns  
again.*

It would be needless to relate all the Troubles and Hardships we met with, in that Journey, it was painful and fruitless, for having gone to the Bank of the Lake, in very foul Weather, after waiting there five Days, for that foul Weather to cease, and after we had imbark'd, notwithstanding the Storm, we were oblig'd to put Ashore again, to return to the Place where we had imbark'd, and there to dig a Hole in the Earth, to bury our Baggage and Provisions, to save the Trouble of carrying them back to Fort *Lewis*, whither we return'd and arrived there the 7th of *October*; where they were surpriz'd to see us come back.

Thus were we oblig'd to continue in that Fort all the rest of *Autumn* and Part of the *Winter*, to our great Sorrow, and not so much for our own Disappointment, as for being, by that Means, obstructed from sending of Succours, as soon as we had expected, as well to the said Fort, as to those *French* of our own Company, whom we had left on the Coast of the Bay of *Mexico*,

It

into

It was  
Those G  
good Indi  
for Wild  
good Bre  
been any  
far'd wel  
Stay ther  
the follow  
servation  
siding the

Fort A  
and seate  
Foot high  
it. It is  
and some  
Rock. I  
Place of  
and migh  
pence.  
their Hu  
Latitude  
ments to  
can be ph  
that the  
can make  
ment, bu  
all Thing  
Life.

The P  
beautifie  
League d  
are cover  
Trees an  
The Fie  
high. C

It was then the good Season for shooting. Those Gentlemen at the Fort had secur'd two good *Indian* Sportsmen, who never let us want for Wild Fowl of all Sorts; besides we had good Bread, and as good Fruit, and had there been any Thing to drink besides Water, we had far'd well. The Leisure we had during our Stay there, gave me an Opportunity of making the following Remarks, as well of my own Observation, as what I learn'd of the *French* residing there.

Fort Lewis is in the Country of the *Illinois* and seated on a steep Rock, about two hundred Foot high, the River running at the Bottom of it. It is only fortified with Stakes and Palisades, and some Houses advancing to the Edge of the Rock. It has a very spacious Esplanade, or Place of Arms. The Place is naturally strong, and might be made so by Art, with little Expence. Several of the Natives live in it, in their Huts. I cannot give an Account of the Latitude it stands in, for Want of proper Instruments to take an Observation, but Nothing can be pleasanter; and it may be truly affirm'd, that the Country of the *Illinois* enjoys all that can make it accomplish'd, not only as to Ornament, but also for its plentiful Production of all Things requisite for the Support of human Life.

*Description of Fort Lewis and the Country about it.*

The Plain, which is water'd by the River, is beautified by two small Hills, about half a League distant from the Fort, and those Hills are cover'd with Groves of Oaks, Walnut-Trees and other Sorts I have named elsewhere. The Fields are full of Grass, growing up very high. On the Sides of the Hills is found a

*Lime and Clay for Bricks, &c.*

1687



gravelly Sort of Stone, very fit to make Lime for Building. There are also many Clay Pits, fit for making of Earthen Ware, Bricks and Tiles, and along the River there are Coal Pits, the Coal whereof has been try'd and found very good.

*Mines.*

There is no Reason to question, but that there are in this Country, Mines of all Sorts of Metals, and of the richest, the Climate being the same as that of *New Mexico*. We saw several Spots, where it appeared there were Iron Mines, and found some Pieces of it on the Bank of the River, which Nature had cleansed. Travellers who have been at the upper Part of the *Mississipi*, affirm they have found Mines there, of very good Lead.

*Product.*

That Country is one of the most temperate in the World, and consequently whatsoever is sow'd there, whether Herbs, Roots, *Indian*, and even *European* Corn thrives very well, as has been try'd by the *Sieur Baifrontet*, who sow'd of all Sorts, and had a plentiful Crop, and we eat of the Bread, which was very good. And whereas we were assured, that there were Vines which run up, whose Grapes are very good and delicious, growing along the River, it is reasonable to believe, that if those Vines were transplanted and prun'd, there might be very good Wine made of them. There is also Plenty of wild Apple and Pear Trees, and of several other Sorts, which would afford excellent Fruit, were they grafted and transplanted.

All other Sorts of Fruit, as Plumbs, Peaches and others, wherewith the Country abounds, would become exquisite, if the same Industry were

into

were us'd, *France* would be over. The whereof

As for *nois*, in many of those of them are natural, the Burden belong to them Business, and when they are to carry there to

When the Women up. Those ours in *France* Swarms,

The *Indian* extremely among them, never throw Water.

The Nation not at all, but it is not every Man Hands, for out of the subject to the *Indians*, which

were us'd, and other Sorts of Fruit we have in *France* would thrive well, if they were carry'd over. The Earth produces a Sort of Hemp, whereof Cloth might be made and Cordage.

As for the Manners and Customs of the *Illinois*, in many Particulars they are the same as those of the other Nations we have seen. They are naturally fierce and revengeful, and among them the Toil of Sowing, Planting, carrying of Burdens, and doing all other Things that belong to the Support of Life, appertains peculiarly to the Women. The Men have no other Business but going to the War and hunting, and the Women must fetch the Game when they have kill'd it, which sometimes they are to carry very far to their Dwellings, and there to parch, or dress it any other Way.

When the Corn or other Grain is sow'd, the Women secure it from the Birds till it comes up. Those Birds are a Sort of Starlings, like ours in *France*, but larger and fly in great Swarms.

The *Illinois* have but few Children, and are extremely fond of them; it is the Custom among them, as well as others I have mentioned, never to chide, or beat them, but only to throw Water at them, by Way of Chastisement.

The Nations we have spoken of before, are not at all, or very little, addicted to Thieving; but it is not so with the *Illinois*, and it behoves every Man to watch their Feet as well as their Hands, for they know how to turn any Thing out of the Way most dexterously. They are subject to the general Vice of all the other *Indians*, which is to boast very much of their Warlike

02. 1687

~

Manners  
and Cu-  
stoms of  
the Illi-  
nois.

Women do  
all Labour.

Children;

Thieving.

Boasting.

92. 1687.



Care of the  
Dead.

Warlike Exploits, and that is the main Subject of their Discourse, and they are very great Lyars.

They pay a Respect to their Dead, as appears by their special Care of burying them, and even of putting into lofty Coffins the Bodies of such as are considerable among them, as their Chiefs and others, which is also practised among the *Accancea's*, but they differ in this Particular, that the *Accancea's* weep and make their Complaints for some Days, whereas the *Chahonans* and other People of the *Illinois* Nation do just the Contrary; for when any of them die, they wrap them up in Skins, and then put them into Coffins made of the Barks of Trees, then sing and dance about them for twenty four Hours. Those Dancers take Care to tie Calabashes, or Gourds about their Bodies, with some *Indian* Wheat in them, to rattle and make a Noise, and some of them have a Drum, made of a great Earthen Pot, on which they extend a wild Goat's Skin, and beat thereon with one Stick, like our Tabors.

Presents to  
the Dead.

During that Rejoicing, they throw their Presents on the Coffin, as Bracelets, Pendants, or Pieces of Earthen Ware, and Strings of Beads, encouraging the Singers to perform their Duty well. If any Friend happens to come thither at that Time, he immediately throws down his Present and falls a singing and dancing like the rest. When that Ceremony is over, they bury the Body, with Part of the Presents, making choice of such as may be most proper for it. They also bury with it, some Store of *Indian* Wheat, with a Pot to boil it in, for fear the dead Person should be hungry on his long Journey; and

into M

and they

Year's En

A good

they divid

a Game,

Winner.

Stick, ver

be the Ha

throws th

Men run

and at las

the first L

he who ke

on to the

have been

Ceremony

whom the

The M

than the P

part after

they pleas

the Men a

when they

ly cut of

been so se

Neverth

great Crim

men who

with *French*

addicted t

they never

they are n

to be prev

who have

and they repeat the same Ceremony at the Year's End. O.B. 1687.

A good Number of Presents still remaining, they divide them into several Lots, and play at a Game, call'd of the Stick, to give them to the Winner. That Game is play'd, taking a short Stick, very smooth and greas'd, that it may be the Harder to hold it fast. One of the Elders throws that Stick as far as he can, the young Men run after it, snatch it from each other, and at last, he who remains possess'd of it, has the first Lot. The Stick is then thrown again, he who keeps it then has the second Lot, and so on to the End. The Women, whose Husbands have been slain in War, often perform the same Ceremony, and treat the Singers and Dancers whom they have before invited.

*Game of the Stick.*

The Marriages of the *Illinois* last no longer, than the Parties agree together; for they freely part after a Hunting Bout, each going which Way they please, without any Ceremony. However, the Men are jealous enough of their Wives, and when they catch them in a Fault, they generally cut off their Noses, and I saw one who had been so serv'd.

*Marriages*

Nevertheless, Adultery is not reckon'd any great Crime among them, and there are Women who make no Secret of having had to do with *French Men*. Yet are they not sufficiently addicted to that Vice to offer themselves, and they never fall, unless they are seduced to, when, they are none of the most difficult in the World to be prevail'd on. The rest I leave to those who have liv'd longer there than I.

*Adultery.*



98. 1687.



*How the  
Travellers  
liv'd.*

*M. Tonty  
comes to  
Fort Le-  
wis.*

*War with  
the Iro-  
quois.*

We continu'd some Time in Fort Lewis, without receiving any News. Our Business was, after having heard Mass, which we had the good Fortune to do every Day, to divert our selves the best we could. The *Indian* Women daily brought in something fresh, we wanted not for Water Melons, Bread made of *Indian* Corn, bak'd in the Embers, and other such Things, and we rewarded them with little Presents in Return.

On the 27th of *October*, of the same Year, Monsieur Tonty return'd from the War with the *Iroquois*. Our Embraces and the Relation of our Adventures were again repeated; but still concealing from him, the Death of Monsieur de la Sale. He told us all the Particulars of that War, and said, That the *Iroquois* having got Intelligence of the March of the *French* Forces and their Allies, had all come out of their Villages and laid themselves in Ambush by the Way; but that having made a sudden and general Discharge upon our Men, with their usual Cries, yet without much Harm done, they had been repuls'd with Loss, took their Flight, and by the Way burnt all their own Villages. That Monsieur d'Hennonville, chief Governor of *New France*, had caus'd the Army to march, to burn the rest of their Villages, set Fire to their Country and Corn, but would not proceed any farther. That afterwards he had made himself Master of several Canoes belonging to the *English*, most of them laden with Brandy, which had been plunder'd; that the *English* had been sent Prisoners to *Montreal*, they being come to make some Attempt upon the *Illinois*,

We

into

We c  
Month  
from  
Notice  
den wit  
Things,  
being t  
there w  
no lowe  
Men to  
fir'd the  
with Pe  
ded fort  
with son  
*Chaboua*  
before t

That  
soon bro  
ing their  
End of  
our Rese  
from Ca  
were  
take tha  
portunis  
quinay,  
from Ca

Mont  
before t  
get of b  
Sum of  
*Illinois*.  
who bel  
no Diffi  
4000 Li  
Canoe

We continued after this Manner, till the Month of *December*, when two Men arrived, from *Montreal*. They came to give Notice to *Monfr. Tonty*, that three Canoes, laden with Merchandize, Powder, Ball and other Things, were arriv'd at *Chicagon*, that there being too little Water in the River, and what there was being frozen, they could come down no lower; so that it being requisite to send Men to fetch those Things, *Monfr. Tonty* desir'd the Chief of the *Chabouanous* to furnish him with People. That Chief accordingly provided forty, as well Men as Women, who set out with some *French* Men. The Honesty of the *Chabouanous* was the Reason of preferring them before the *Illinois*, who are naturally Knaves.

That Ammunition and the Merchandize were soon brought, and very seasonably, the Fort being then in Want. We stay'd there till the End of *February*, 1688, at which Time we fix'd our Resolution to depart, tho' we had no News from *Canada*, as we expected. We found there were some Canoes ready to undertake that Voyage, and we laid hold of that Opportunity to convoy each other to the *Micilimaquinay*, where we hop'd to meet some News from *Canada*.

*Monsieur Cavelier* the Priest, had taken Care, before the Death of *M. de la Sale*, his Brother, to get of him a Letter of Credit, to receive either a Sum of Money or Furs in the Country of the *Illinois*. He tender'd that Letter to *M. Tonty*, who believing *M. de la Sale* was still alive, made no Difficulty of giving him to the Value of about 4000 Livres in Furs, Castors and Otter Skins, a Canoe and other Effects, for which, the said

N

Monfr.

Mar. 1688

Monfr. *Cavelier* gave him his Note, and we prepar'd for our Journey.

I have before observed, that there was a Jesuit, whose Name was *Daloux*, at Fort *Lewis*, and who had been very much surpriz'd to hear that Monfr. *de la Sale* was to come in a short Time, being under great Apprehensions on Account of a Conspiracy intended to have been carry'd on, against Monfr. *de la Sale*'s Interest. That Father perceiving our Departure was fix'd, mov'd first, and went away foremost, to return to *Micilimaquinay*; so that they were left without a Priest at Fort *Lewis*, which was a great Trouble to us, because we were the Occasion of it, and therefore those, who were to remain in the Fort, anticipated the Time, and made their *Easter*, taking the Advantage of the Presence of F. *Anastasi* and M. *Cavelier*.

The Travel  
continu'd.

At length, vve set out the 21th of *March*, from Fort *Lewis*. The Sieur *Boisfrondet*, who was desirous to return to *France*, join'd us, we embark'd on the River, which was then become navigable, and before we had advanc'd five Leagues, met with a rapid Stream, which oblig'd us to go Ashore, and then again into the Water, to draw along our Canoe. I had the Misfortune to hurt one of my Feet against a Rock that lay under Water, which troubled me very much for a long Time; and we being under a Necessity of going often into the Water, I suffer'd extreamly, and more than I had done since our Departure from the Gulph of *Mexico*.

We arriv'd at *Chicagon* the 29th of *March*, and our first Care was to go seek vvhath vve had conceal'd at our former Voyage, having, as was there said, bury'd our Luggage and Provisions.

into

sions.

Fürs an

long'd t

Man, w

during

there w

he had

medled

made U

The

Place, t

tageous

being b

Nothing

on; yet

was a g

resembl

sions, v

we boil

licious,

Ther

those

being b

Kind o

good. I

not so f

ours in

lish as

The

imbark

the 5th

shun th

and sav

but arri

netonan,

depart

ing, and

Mar. 1688



sions. We found it had been open'd, and some Furs and Linen taken away, almost all which belong'd to me. This had been done by a French Man, whom M. Tonty had sent from the Fort, during the Winter Season, to know whether there were any Canoes at *Chicagon*, and whom he had directed to see whether any Body had medled with what we had conceal'd, and he made Use of that Advice to rob us.

The bad Weather oblig'd us to stay in that Place, till *April*. That Time of Rest was advantageous for the Healing my Foot; and there being but very little Game in that Place, we had Nothing but our Meal or *Indian* Wheat to feed on; yet we discover'd a Kind of *Manna*, which was a great Help to us. It was a Sort of Trees, resembling our Maple, in which we made Incisions, whence flow'd a sweet Liquor, and in it we boil'd our *Indian* Wheat, which made it delicious, sweet and of a very agreeable Relish.

Sweet Water from a Tree.

There being no Sugar-Canes in that Country, those Trees supply'd that Liquor, which being boil'd up and evaporated, turn'd into a Kind of Sugar somewhat brownish, but very good. In the Woods we found a Sort of Garlick, not so strong as ours, and small Onions very like ours in Taste, and some Charvel of the same Relish as that we have, but different in the Leaf.

The Weather being somewhat mended, we embark'd again and enter'd upon the Lake on the 5th of *April*, keeping to the North Side to shun the *Iroquois*. We had some Storms also, and saw swelling Waves like those of the Sea; but arriv'd safe the 15th at a River call'd *Quinnetonan*, near a Village whence, the Inhabitants depart during the Winter Season, to go a Hunting, and reside there all the Summer.

Quinnetonan River.

Apr. 1688



The Sport is not there as in those Countries from whence we came; but on the Contrary, very poor, and we found Nothing but some very lean Wild Goats, and even those very rarely, because the Wolves, which are very numerous there, make great Havock of them, raking and devouring great Numbers after this Manner.

How  
Wolves  
catch Goats

When the Wolves have discover'd a Herd of Wild Goats, they rouse and set them a running. The Wild Goats never fail to take to the first Lake they meet with. The hunting Wolves, who are used to that, guard the Banks carefully, moving along the Edges of them. The poor Goats being pierc'd by the Cold of the Lake, grow weary and so get out, or else the River swelling forces them out with its Waves, quite benumm'd, so that they are easily taken by their Enemies, who devour them. We frequently saw those Wolves watching along the Side of the Lake, and kept off to avoid frightening them, to the End the Wild Goats might quit their Sanctuary, that we might catch some of them, as it sometimes fell out.

Poutoua-  
tanni Na-  
sion.

The 28th, we arriv'd among the *Poutoutan-  
nis*, which is half Way to *Micilimaquinay*, where we purchas'd some *Indian* Corn for the rest of our Voyage. We found no News there from *Montreal*, and were forc'd to stay some Time to wait an Opportunity to go down the River. No Man daring to venture, because of the War with the *Iroquois*.

Hurons  
and Outa-  
houacs  
Nations.

There are some *French* Men in that Place, and four *Jesuits*, who have a House well built with Timber, inclosed with Stakes and Palisades. There are also some *Hurons* and

int

and O  
whom  
withou  
downri  
none l  
Those  
of instr  
transla  
peculia  
Things  
ligion.  
The  
*Cavalie*  
we too  
Travel  
rest of  
of Wh  
about, t  
lons an  
as in t  
they li  
they c  
among  
On t  
comma  
*Montre*  
& *Henn*  
tlemen  
and ot  
the Ri  
Condit  
with th  
anothe  
of his  
Note t  
fame w  
having

and *Outahouacs*, two Neighbouring Nations, May 1688  
 whom those Fathers take Care to instruct, not without very much Trouble, those People being downright Libertines, and there are very often none but a few Women in their Churches. Those Fathers have each of them the Charge of instructing a Nation, and to that Effect have translated the proper Prayers into the Language peculiar to each of them, as also all other Things relating to the Catholick Faith and Religion.

They offer'd Father *Anastafus* and Monsieur June 1688  
*Cavelier* a Room, which they accepted of, and we took up our Lodging in a little Hovel some Travellers had made. There we continued the rest of May and Part of June, till after the Feast of *Whitsontide*. The Natives of the Country about, till the Land and sow *Indian Corn*, *Melons* and *Gourds*, but they do not thrive so well as in the Country we came from. However they live on them, and besides they have *Fish* they catch in the Lake, for *Flesh* is very scarce among them.

On the 4th of June, there arriv'd four Canoes, commanded by Monsieur *de Porneuf*, coming from *Montreal*, and bringing News from the *Marques & Hannonville*, and Orders to send to the Settlements which were towards the Lake *des Puans* and others higher up, towards the Source of the River *Calbert*, to know the Posture and Condition of Affairs. We prepar'd to be gone with the two Canoes. Monsieur *Cavelier* bought another, to carry our Baggage, and left Part of his Furs with a Merchant, who gave him a Note to receive Money at *Montreal*. I did the same with those few Furs I had, the rest of them having been left at *Micilimaquinay*. We



July 1688



Illinois  
and Hu-  
rons.

French  
River.

Nipic-  
ingue Lake.

Arrival at  
Montreal

We took Leave of the *Jesuits*, and set out in four Canoes, viz. two belonging to Monsieur *de Porneuf*, and two to Monsieur *Cavelier*, one of which had been brought from Fort *Lewis*, and the other bought, as I have just now said, vve being twenty nine of us in those four Canoes. We row'd on till the 24th, when Monsieur *de Porneuf* left us to go to St. *Mary's* Fall, to carry the Orders given him. The 25th, we got out of the Lake of the *Illinois*, to enter that of the *Hurons*, on the Banks whereof stands the Village, call'd *Tessalon*, where Monsieur *de Porneuf* came again to us, with a Canoe of the Natives, and with him we held on our Way.

We proceeded to *Chebonany* the 30th of June, and the 3d of July, enter'd the *French River*, where we were forc'd several Times to carry our Canoes to avoid the Falls and the rapid Streams, observing as we went a barren and dry Country, full of Rocks, on which there grew Cedars and Fir Trees, which take Root in the Clefs of those Rocks.

The 5th, we enter'd upon the little Lake of *Nipicingue*, adjoining to a Nation of that Name. We got out of it again and enter'd upon the great River, where, after having pass'd the great Fall, we arriv'd the 13th, at the Point of the Island of *Montreal*. We landed at a Village call'd *la Chine*, which had belong'd to the late Monfr *de la Sale*. Monfr. *Cavelier* set out the 14th, for *Montreal*, where we came to him the 17th.

At *Montreal* we found the Marques d' *Henonville*, Monsieur *de Noroy* the Intendant and other

in  
other C  
of our  
ticulars  
ned to  
ing Mo  
the Oc  
and the  
us, that  
much as  
We  
in Need  
with us  
knowin  
*France*,  
*treal*.

The  
the Riv  
Father  
of the  
League  
where  
ther G  
who ex  
more f  
many  
our hun  
tector.

We  
there  
and t  
be putt  
vve mu  
Monfr  
had le  
us, and

Aug. 1688

other Gentlemen, to whom we gave an Account of our long and painful Travels, with the Particulars of what we had seen, which they listned to with Satisfaction, but without mentioning Monsieur *de la Sale's* Death. We told them the Occasion of our going over into *France*, and they approv'd of it, being of Opinion with us, that we ought to hasten our Departure as much as possible.

We made us some Cloaths, whereof we stood in Need. The *Sieur Teissier*, who came along with us, and was of the Reform'd Religion, knowing the Exercise of it was forbid in *France*, abjur'd it in the great Church of *Montreal*.

The 17th, we went aboard a Bark to go down the River to *Quebec*, where we arriv'd the 29th, Father *Anastasius* carry'd us to the Monastery of the Fathers of his Order, seated half a League from the Town, on a little River, where we were most kindly receiv'd by the Father Guardian and the other Religious Men, who express'd much Joy to see us, and we still more for being in a Place of Safety, after so many Perils and Toils, for which we return'd our humble Thanks to Almighty God, our Protector.

Arrival at  
Quebec.

We chose rather to take up our Lodging there than in the Town, to avoid the Visits and troublesome Questions every one vould be putting to us with much Importunity, which vve must have been oblig'd to bear patiently. Monsieur *Cavelier* and his Nephew, vvhom vve had left at *Montreal*, arriv'd some Days after us, and vvere lodg'd in the Seminary.

Aug. 1688.

We stay'd in that Monastery till the 21st of August, when we embark'd on a large Boat, eighteen Persons of us, to go down the River of St. Laurence, a Board a Ship, that was taking in and fishing of Cod. We went a Board it the 30th of the same Month, and after hearing Mass, made ready and sail'd for our dear Country, arriv'd safe at *Rousselle* on Saturday the 9th of October 1688, whence, setting out by Land, the 15th, the same Providence, which had protected and conducted us, brought us without any Misfortune to *Roan*, the 7th of October, the same Year.

The End of the JOURNAL.

---

The Remainder of the LETTER, written by him who revis'd this JOURNAL, the other Part whereof is at the Beginning of it, this being the Sequel to the said JOURNAL.

Note,  
That these  
have writ  
of those  
Parts, but  
none of  
this par-  
ticular  
Voyage.

THREE several Authors have given an Account of this Voyage; First, Father is Clerk, upon the Relations he had from the Fathers *Zenobius* and *Anastafus*, Recolets, as he was himself and both of them Eye-Witnesses: Secondly, The Chevalier *Tonty*, who was also a Witness to a considerable Part of those Adventures: And, Lastly, Father *Hennepin*, a Flem-  
ming,

into

ming, of  
done it  
quainted  
Share in  
his Rela  
he who  
the Sou  
sapi, and  
the Co  
Name o  
there, a  
Holland,  
much en  
dedicat  
Orange,  
tain. A  
ridiculo  
worfe J  
dious B  
he exh  
Though  
yet unk  
nies th  
Nation  
preach  
whom  
of that  
Religio  
consequ  
and tu  
Laught  
to the  
to go p  
Or wo  
than th  
cuseabl

ming, of the same Order of the Recolets, has done it more largely, he seems to be well acquainted with the Country, and had a great Share in those Discoveries; but the Truth of his Relations is much controverted. It was he who went to the Northward, and towards the Source of the *Mississipi*, which he calls *Mechassipi*, and who printed, at *Paris*, an Account of the Country about the River, giving it the Name of *Louisiana*. He ought to have stopp'd there, and not to have gone, as he did, into *Holland*, to set forth another Edition, very much enlarg'd, and perhaps not so true, which he dedicated to *William* the Third, Prince of *Orange*, and afterwards King of *Great Britain*. An Action for a Religious Man no less ridiculous than extravagant, not to give it a worse Name; for after many great and tedious Encomiums given that Protestant Prince, he exhorts and conjures him to turn his Thoughts towards those vast Countries, as yet unknown, to conquer them and send Colonies thither, to make known to those Savage Nations the true God and his Worship, and to preach the Gospel. That good Religious Man, whom many have falsely thought, on Account of that Extravagancy, to have renounc'd his Religion, did not consider what he said, and consequently has scandaliz'd the Catholics, and turnish'd the *Hugonots* with Matter of Laughter; for is it likely, that they being Enemies to the *Roman Church*, would employ Recolets to go preach up *Papery*, as they call it in *Canada*? Or would they introduce any other Religion than their own? Can *Father Hennepin* be excusable in this Point?

In

M. de la  
Sale's Fort  
taken by  
the Spani-  
ards.

M. de Hi-  
berville's  
Expedition  
for the Mis-  
sissipi.

In fine it appears, by all that has been writ-  
by those several Persons concerning that En-  
terprize, that the Murder committed on the  
Person of Monsieur *de la Sale* was the Occasion  
of its miscarrying; but that which obstructed  
the making of some Provision in that Case was,  
the said Murders being conceal'd for the Space  
of two Years, and that the *Spaniards* of *Mexico*  
having been inform'd of all the Affair, sent  
Men, who carry'd off the weak Garrison Mon-  
sieur *de la Sale* had left in the Fort built by  
him, near the Place of his Landing, before he  
penetrated into the Country, to find out the  
*Mississipi*. They also entirely raz'd that Fort,  
so that Seven or Eight Years elaps'd, till Mon-  
sieur *de Hiberville*, a Gentleman of *Canada*, and  
a Person of Capacity and Courage, famous for  
his notable Exploits in *Hudson's Bay* and other  
Parts, resolv'd to reassume and revive that Pro-  
ject. He came over into *France* upon that De-  
sign, and made an Armament about the Year  
1698, set out and sail'd to the Gulf of *Mexico*.  
Being an able Seaman, he search'd along the  
Coast so narrowly, that he found the Mouth  
of that fatal *Mississipi* and built a Fort on it,  
leaving Men there, with a good Quantity of  
Ammunition and Provisions, and return'd to  
*France*, intending to go back with a Reinforce-  
ment, as he did, and having penetrated far into  
the Country, discover'd several Savage Nations,  
and join'd Friendship and Alliance with them,  
as also built another Fort, which he left well  
stor'd with Men and Necessaries, return'd into  
*France*; but attempting a third Voyage, he dy'd  
by the Way, and thus, for want of Relief and  
Sup-

into

Support,  
again.

But G  
the Con  
rested o  
tages it  
ner, for  
will follo  
the Affa  
who is t  
portant  
Secretary  
Worth,  
prodigio  
his Close  
table Vo  
ful. To  
tent, be  
has gran  
Colonies  
Journal,  
Name of  
hence for  
The Gra  
several  
ters Pat  
And  
without  
Ship to  
perhaps  
Brother  
*Delbee*  
Years ag  
Educate  
being h  
Troop

Support, that noble Enterprize miscarry'd again.

But God has now provided for it, and it is the Concern of Heaven, for if *France* is interested on Account of the Temporal Advantages it expects, the Church is so in like Manner, for the Conversion of the *Indians* it hopes will follow. Accordingly, Providence has taken the Affair in Hand, having rais'd the Man, who is the fittest to revive and support so important a Project. This is Monsieur *Crozat*, Secretary to the King, a Man of singular Worth, very Intelligent, Well-meaning, and prodigiously Rich, who without going out of his Closet, has been the Occasion of many notable Voyages by Sea, and all of them successful. To him, his Majesty, by his Letters Patent, bearing Date the 14th of *Septemb.* 1712. has granted the sole Power to trade and settle Colonies in the Countries describ'd in this Journal, and which are known to us by the Name of *Louisiana* and the River *Mississipi*, from hence forward to be call'd the River of *St. Lewis*. The Grant is made to him for 15 Years, under several Conditions mention'd in the said Letters Patent, which have been made publick.

And whereas such a Grant cannot subsist without Blacks, he is also allow'd to send a Ship to *Guinea* to purchase them. They may perhaps find there the famous Black *Aniaga*, Brother to a King of *Guinea*, whom Captain *Delbee* brought over into *France*, above Thirty Years ago. The King was pleas'd to have him Educated, Instructed and Baptiz'd, the *Dauphin* being his Godfather; then put him into his Troop of Musquetiers, and afterwards made him

M. Crozat  
only to  
plant Colo-  
nies and  
Trade in  
*Louisiana*;



A Black  
bred in  
France  
turns to his  
Native Cu-  
stoms.

him a Captain in his own Regiment, where he serv'd Honourably. Being desirous to see his own Country again, where he promis'd to promote the *French Trade*, and the settling of Missioners, his Majesty loaded him with Presents, and order'd a Ship to carry him back to *Guinea*; but as soon as he was there, he no longer remember'd he had been baptiz'd, and turn'd again as perfect a Black, as he had been before. A Friend of mine, who was an Officer aboard a Ship, and hapned to be on that Coast in the Year 1708, had two or three Interviews with that Black, who came aboard him. He was a great Man in that Country, for his Brother was King. He express'd much Gratitude for the Kindness that had been shewn him in *France*, and was extraordinary Courteous, and made great Offers to those aboard the Ship, and to all such of the Nation as would go into *Guinea*.

This Navigation to *Louisiana* will farther procure us a free Resort to the two famous Ports of the Gulf of *Mexico*, viz. The *Havana* and *Veracruz*, where Strangers did not use to be admitted, and which we knew only by their Names and their Situation in our Maps.

Veracruz  
in New  
Spain.

The latter of those Towns is the Port of *New Spain*, at the Bottom of the Bay or Gulf, in 18 Degrees of *North Latitude*, Seated in a Sandy Plain, encompass'd with Mountains; beyond which there are Woods and Meadows, well Stock'd with Cattle and wild Fowl. The Air is very Hot, and not Healthy, when any Winds blow, except the *North*, which rises commonly once in Eight or Fifteen Days, and holds for the Space of Twenty Four Hours, blowing

into

blowing  
from the  
piercing.  
plainly a  
Mountain  
Leagues  
Streets of  
Houses a  
tification  
Front of  
Semicircle  
Directly  
League of  
of Ground  
Breaking  
built and  
Garrison  
Pieces of  
any where  
Town;  
cautions,  
Anchor.

Most  
is of a ta  
Chocolat  
and eating  
Women  
seen by  
and then  
cannot r  
which re  
their Fe  
the Right  
In their  
but a St  
silver La

blowing so hard, that there is no going ashore from the Ships, and then the Cold is very piercing. When the Weather is clear there plainly appear, on the Road to *Mexico*, two Mountains rising above the Clouds, and forty Leagues distant, all cover'd with Snow. The Streets of *Veracruz* are streight as a Line; the Houses are handsome and regular; the Fortifications next the Land inconsiderable, but the Front of the Town next the Sea forms a Semicircle, with a little Fort at each End. Directly before that Front, a Quarter of a League out at Sea, there stands, on a Spot of Ground, inaccessible, by Reason of the Breaking of the Sea, a strong Citadel, well built and furnished with all Necessaries, a good Garrison and double Batteries of two hundred Pieces of brass Cannon. Ships cannot anchor any where, but between that Citadel and the Town; besides that, it requires several Precautions, because it is difficult coming to an Anchor.

Most of the Inhabitants are *Mulattoes*, that is of a tawny dark Colour, who live most upon Chocolate and Sweetmeats, extraordinary sober, and eating little Flesh. The Men are haughty, the Women keep retired above Stairs, not to be seen by Strangers, and seldom going abroad, and then in Coaches or Chairs, and those who cannot reach to it, cover'd with fine silk Veils, which reach from the Crown of their Heads to their Feet, leaving only a small Opening on the Right Side, for them to see their Way. In their own Apartments they wear nothing but a Smock and a silk Petticoat, with gold or silver Laces, without any Thing on their Heads, and

and their Hair platted with Ribbons, a gold Chain about their Neck, Bracelets of the same and Pendants of Emeralds in their Ears. They could well enough like the Behaviour and Company of the French, but that the jealous Temper of the Men obstructs them. There being a Picture of *Philip King of Spain*, now reigning, aboard the Ship in which my Friend was, who gave me this Account, the People swarm'd aboard to see it, they were never satisfy'd with gazing at it, and there was a most magnificent Festival kept in the Town, on Account of the Birth of the Prince of *Asturias*.

They understand Trade very well, but are sloathful and averse to Labour, fond of State and Ease. They wear great Strings of Beads about their Necks, their Houses are full of Pictures and Images of Devotion, decently furnish'd with Purceline and *China* Goods. The Churches are magnificently adorned with Plate.

All Strangers are forbid Trading there, yet some come by Stealth and deal Underhand, by Means of Presents made to such Persons as can favour them. If those Mulattoes call themselves white, it is only to honour themselves and by Way of Distinction from their Slaves, who are all Blacks, and having got much Money by their Labour, ransom themselves and sometimes become considerable Merchants.

The City of *Mexico*, Capital of the Country and the Residence of the Vice-roy, is about eighty Leagues distant from *Veracruz*, to the Westward, the Way to it is very bad and ill furnish'd with Provisions. That Country would be better in some Parts, were it well cultivated

Mexico  
City.

into

cultivate  
little of  
Corn and  
Cakes,  
Trees and  
Countries  
are Bush  
among  
for tho'  
Leaves of  
Finger,  
ther, in  
itself is  
grows of  
Seeds like  
is of a V  
is a Sor  
are so fe  
they bu  
carefully  
let Dye  
into Ea  
lour. T  
as in oth  
Sort of  
call'd th  
teach to  
what I h  
*Veracruz*

As f  
less fam  
well as  
towards  
Side of  
of Cance  
on this

cultivated by the Inhabitants. They sow but little of our Wheat, and are satisfied with *Indian* Corn and *Cassabi* Root, whereof they make Cakes, as is practis'd in the Islands. Their Trees and Fruits are the same as in other hot Countries. About the Town of *Veracruz*, there are Bushes of a Sort of Thorn, without Leaves, among which grows an extraordinary Plant; for tho' it has but a small Stem, it shoots out Leaves of a Cabbage Green, as thick as a Man's Finger, which grow out, one at the End of another, in the Shape of a Racket, and the Plant itself is so call'd. From those Leaves there grows out a Sort of red Figs, very juicy, with Seeds like those of the Pomgranate; the Juice is of a Violet Colour, but unsavoury. There is a Sort of Flies that cleave to it and are so fond of the Taste of the Fruit, that they burst and drop down dead. They are carefully gather'd and dry'd, and are the Scarlet Dye, call'd *Cochinilla*, which is brought into *Europe*, and makes that beautiful Colour. The Birds and Beasts are much the same as in other Countries of *America*. There is a Sort of Bird, all red, which for that Reason is call'd the *Cardinal*; this they often tame and teach to sing like a *Canary* Bird. This is what I have been told concerning the Town of *Veracruz*.

As for the *Havana*, a Town and Port no less famous, in the Island of *Cuba*, belonging as well as the other to the Crown of *Spain*, it stands towards the Western End, and on the North Side of that Island, almost under the Tropic of *Cancer*, and about four or five hundred Leagues on this Side of *Veracruz*. It is large and beautiful

*Havana.*

ful; the Port good, secur'd by two Forts on the two Sides, and Brass Guns, from twenty four to thirty six Pounders, the Entrance so narrow, that only one Vessel can go in at once. The Town is encompass'd by a good Wall, fortify'd with five Bastions, furnish'd with Cannon. The Streets are all as strait as a Line, and level, the Houses very handsome, but ill furnish'd. In the Midst of it is a fine Square, the Buildings about all uniform. The Churches are magnificent, and enrich'd with Gold and Silver, Lamps, Candlesticks, and Ornaments for the Altars. There are some Lamps curiously wrought, which weigh two hundred Marks of Silver, each Mark being half a Pound. The Revenue of the Bishoprick amounts to fifty thousand Crowns, and he who enjoy'd it in the Year 1703, as I was inform'd by my Friend, who gave me this Account of what he had seen, was the greatest Ornament of that City, for his Virtues and Charity, being satisfy'd with Necessaries, and spending all the rest upon the Poor, and in repairing decay'd Churches. Tho' Strangers are prohibited to trade there, yet it is easier carried on than at *Veracruz*. The Inhabitants are more familiar; the Women have more Liberty, yet they do not go Abroad without their Veils to wrap and hide them. Many of them speak *French*, and dress after the *French* Fashion, and some of our Nation have settled themselves there. When my Friend was there, a magnificent Festival was celebrated for fifteen Days successively, in Honour of K. Philip the Fifth, and Monsieur *du Cassé* being then there, with his Squadron, the City desir'd him to join with them. To that Purpose, he set

ashore

into

ashore  
Martia  
was mu  
where  
there,  
tho' it  
savory.

We  
famous  
cause it  
in Reg  
to be r  
pendan  
Way,  
the Co  
there,  
ther, a  
*Veracruz*  
Corresp  
the Sec

But  
the Co  
Charge  
dence f  
vance i  
ment o  
from Je  
There i  
wise th  
Blessing  
former  
for wha  
for still  
Settlem  
tagious  
pagatin

ashore five hundred Men, who perform'd the Martial Exercise in the great Square, which was much admir'd. The *Havana* is the Place, where the Galeons meet. Provisions are dear there, especially Bread ; but the Wine is not, tho' it is good. Fish and Flesh there are unsavory. The Inhabitants are *Spaniards*.

We have thought fit to describe those two famous Ports of the Bay of *Mexico*, as well because it has not been so exactly done before, as in Regard that the Settlement which is going to be made in *Louisiana*, may have some Dependance on them ; for the *Havana* lying in the Way, those who perform the Voyage may have the Conveniency of taking in Refreshments there, of putting in for Shelter in foul Weather, and of careening or refitting. As for the *Veracruz*, tho' farther out of the Way, the Correspondence there may be advantageous for the Securing of the Colony of *Louisiana*.

But how can that fail of succeeding, under the Conduct of Monsieur *Crozat*, who has the Charge of that Enterprize, and whom Providence seems to have in a Manner ingag'd to advance in Wealth and Honour, to the Amazement of the World, and yet free from Envy, from Jealousy, and from any Sort of Complaints. There is therefore no Reason to presage otherwise than well of the Event of this Affair ; the Blessings God has pour'd down upon all his former Undertakings, seem to be a Security for what is to follow. There is Reason to hope for still greater Blessings on this Project of a Settlement in *Louisiana*, as being equally advantageous to Religion and the State ; for the propagating of the Knowledge and Service of God

Q

among



among an infinite Number of Savages, by Means of the Missioners, who are to be sent to and maintain'd in those vast Countries; the Planting of the Faith in that new World, only the Name whereof is known to us, and the Reducing of it to be a Christian and a French Province, under the Dominion of our August Monarch, and to the eternal Memory of his Reign, will be the Consequences and the Fruits of Monsieur Crozat's Care and Expence, the Glory of his Enterprize, the Security of the large Fortune he has made in this Life, and what is rare among such rich Men, the Earnest of much better in the Next. Heaven grant our Hopes and Wishes may be answer'd.

*I am, &c.*

*The Letters Patent granted by the King of France to M. Crozat.*

**L**OUI S, by the Grace of God, King of France and Navarre : To all who shall see these present Letters, Greeting. The Care we have always had to procure the Welfare and Advantage of our Subjects having induced us, notwithstanding the almost continual Wars which we have been obliged to support from the Beginning of our Reign, to seek for all possible Opportunities of enlarging and extending the Trade of our American Colonies, *We did in the Year 1683 give our Orders*

*in  
to und  
Lands  
Ameri  
co :  
commi  
enough  
might  
of M  
obliged  
to giv  
and m  
proserv  
very  
which  
Carol  
the We  
in Eur  
till no  
the A  
from  
are co  
Engag  
have  
the In  
the D  
tries  
Provi  
there  
Comm  
our R  
Neces  
greate  
be br  
chang  
but C  
factur*

to undertake a Discovery of the Countries and Lands which are situated in the Northern Part of America, between New France and New Mexico: And the Sieur de la Sile, to whom we committed that Enterprize, having had Success enough to confirm a Belief that a Communication might be settled from New France to the Gulph of Mexico by Means of large Rivers; This obliged us immediately after the Peace of Ryswick to give Orders for the establishing a Colony there, and maintaining a Garrison which has kept and preserved the Possession, we had taken in the very Year 1683 of the Lands, Coasts and Islands which are situated in the Gulph of Mexico, between Carolina on the East, and Old and New Mexico on the West. But a new War having broke out in Europe shortly after, there was no Possibility, till now, of reaping from that new Colony the Advantages that might have been expected from thence, because the private Men, who are concerned in the Sea Trade, were all under Engagements with other Colonies, which they have been obliged to follow: And whereas upon the Information we have received concerning the Disposition and Situation of the said Countries known at present by the Name of the Province *la Louisiana*, we are of Opinion that there may be established therein a considerable Commerce, so much the more advantageous to our Kingdom in that there has hitherto been a Necessity of fetching from Foreigners the greatest Part of the Commodities which may be brought from thence, and because in Exchange thereof we need carry thither nothing but Commodities of the Growth and Manufacture of our own Kingdom; we have resolv-

ed to grant the Commerce of the Country of *Louisiana* to the *Sieur Anthony Crozat* our Councillor, Secretary of the Houshold, Crown and Revenue, to whom we entrust the Execution of this Project. We are the more readily inclined hereunto, because his Zeal and the singular Knowledge he has acquired in maritime Commerce, encourage us to hope for as good Success as he has hitherto had in the divers and sundry Enterprizes he has gone upon, and which have procured to our Kingdom great Quantities of Gold and Silver in such Conjunctions as have rendred them very welcome to us.

FOR THESE REASONS being desirous to shew our Favour to him, and to regulate the Conditions upon which we mean to grant him the said Commerce, after having deliberated this Affair in our Council, Of our certain Knowledge, full Power and Royal Authority, We by these Presents signed by our Hand, have appointed and do appoint the said *Sieur Crozat* solely to carry on a Trade in all the Lands possessed by Us, and bounded by New Mexico, and by the Lands of the English of Carolina, all the Establishment, Ports, Havens, Rivers, and principally the Port and Haven of the *Isle Dauphine*, heretofore called *Massacre*; the River of *St. Lewis*, heretofore called *Mississipi*, from the Edge of the Sea as far as the *Illinois*; together with the River of *St. Philip*, heretofore called the *Missourys*, and of *St. Jerome*, heretofore called *Ovabache*, with all the Countries, Territories, Lakes within Land, and the Rivers which fall directly or indirectly into that Part of the River of *St. Lewis*.

T H E

into

I. Lands  
be an  
The G  
depend  
France  
that  
Illinoi  
to the  
becom  
Ourse  
think  
said C

II.

Fifte  
the  
and  
Mero  
of  
shall  
and  
Qual  
Pret  
Pena  
othe  
shall  
Gov  
Tro  
and  
Sieur

II

dig  
thro  
try  
ther

## THE ARTICLES.

I. Our Pleasure is, that all the aforesaid Lands, Countries Streams, Rivers and Islands be and remain comprised under the Name of *The Government of Louisiana*, which shall be dependant upon the General Government of *New France*, to which it is subordinate ; and further, that all the Lands which we possess from the *Illinois* be united, so far as Occasion requires, to the General Government of *New France*, and become Part thereof, reserving however to Ourselves the Liberty of enlarging as We shall think fit the Extent of the Government of the said Country of *Louisiana*.

II. We grant to the said *Sieur Crozat* for Fifteen successive Years, to be reckon'd from the Day of Inrolling these presents, a Right and Power to transport all Sorts of Goods and Merchandize from *France* into the said Country of *Louisiana*, and to traffick thither as he shall think fit. We forbid all and every Person and Persons, Company and Companies of what Quality or Condition soever, and under any Pretence whatever, to trade thither, under Penalty of Confiscation of Goods, Ships, and other more severe Punishments, as Occasion shall require ; for this Purpose we order our Governours and other Officers commanding our Troops in the said Country forcibly to abet, aid and assist the Directors and Agents of the said *Sieur Crozat*.

III. We permit him to search for, open and dig all Sorts of Mines, Veins and Minerals throughout the whole Extent of the said Country of *Louisiana*, and to transport the Profits thereof into any Port of *France* during the said

Fifteen Years; and we grant in Perpetuity to him, his Heirs, and others claiming under him or them, the Property of, in and to the Mines, Veins and Minerals which he shall bring to bear, paying us, in Lieu of all Claim, the Fifth Part of the Gold and Silver which the said *Sieur Crozat* shall cause to be transported to France at his own Charges into what Port he pleases, (of which Fifth we will run the Risque of the Sea and of War,) and the Tenth Part of what Effects he shall draw from the other Mines, Veins and Minerals, which Tenth he shall transfer and convey to our Magazines in the said Country of *Louisiana*.

We likewise permit him to search for precious Stones and Pearls, paying us the Fifth Part in the same Manner as is mention'd for the Gold and Silver.

We will that the said *Sieur Crozat*, his Heirs, or those claiming under him or them the perpetual Right, shall forfeit the Propriety of the said Mines, Veins and Minerals, if they discontinue the Work during three Years, and that in such Case the said Mines, Veins and Minerals shall be fully reunited to our Domaine, by Virtue of this present Article, without the Formality of any Process of Law, but only an Ordinance of Re-union from the Subdelegate of the Intendant of *New France*, who shall be in the said Country, nor do we mean that the said Penalty of Forfeiture in Default of working for three Years, be reputed a Commminatory Penalty.

IV. The said *Sieur Crozat* may vend all such Merchandize, Goods, Wares, Commodities, Arms, and Ammunition as he shall have caused to

into  
to be tr  
Govern  
Savages  
nor shal  
Pretence  
like with  
V. H  
all Sore  
and othe  
Country  
the said  
is to fa  
tants o  
fening  
ing for  
Precenc  
thence  
VI.  
those cl  
of, in a  
which  
try for  
Veins  
in and  
Cultiv  
Struct  
on, ta  
Grant  
and C  
deleg  
said C  
W  
or th  
in R  
Land  
the

to be transported into the said Country and Government of *Louisiana*, as well to the *French*, as *Savages* who are or shall be there settled; nor shall any Person or Persons under any Pretence whatsoever be capable of doing the like without his Leave expressed in Writing.

V. He may purchase in the said Country, all Sorts of Furs, Skins, Leather, Wool, and other Commodities and Effects of the said Country, and transport them to *France* during the said Fifteen Years: And as our Intention is to favour, as much as we can, our Inhabitants of *New France*. And to hinder the Lessening of their Trade, we forbid him Trafficking for Castor in the said Country under any Pretence whatsoever; nor to Convey any from thence into our Kingdom or Foreign Countries.

VI. We Grant to the *Sieur Crozat*, his Heirs or those claiming under him or them, the Property of, in and to all Settlements and Manufactories which he shall erect or set up in the said Country for Silk, Indigo, Wooll, Leather, Mines, Veins and Minerals, as likewise the Property of, in and to the Lands which he shall cause to be Cultivated, with the Mansions, Mills, and Structures which he shall cause to be built thereon, taking Grants thereof from Us, which Grants he shall obtain upon the Verbal Process and Opinion of our Governor and of the Sub-delegate of the Intendant of *New France* in the said Country, to be by him Reported unto Us.

We will that the said *Sieur Crozat*, his Heirs, or those claiming under him or them, shall keep in Repair the said Settlements, Manufactures, Lands and Mills; and in Default thereof during the Space of three Years, he and they shall



Forfeit the same, and the said Settlements, Manufactories, Lands and Mills shall be Re-united to our Domaine fully and amply, and in the same Manner as is mentioned above in the Third Article concerning the Mines, Veins and Minerals.

VII. Our Edicts, Ordinances and Customs, and the Usages of the Mayoralty and Shreevalty of *Paris*, shall be observed for Laws and Customs in the said Country of *Louisiana*.

VIII. The said *Sieur Crozat* shall be oblig'd to send to the said Country of *Louisiana* Two Ships every Year, which he shall cause to set out in the proper Season, in each of which Ships he shall cause to be imbark'd, without paying any Freight, 25 Tun of Victuals, Effects, and necessary Ammunition, for the Maintenance of the Garrison and Forts of the *Louisiana*; and in Case we should cause to be laden above the said 25 Tun in each Ship, we consent to pay the Freight to the said *Sieur Crozat*, at the common Merchantile Rates.

He shall be oblig'd to convey our Officers of *Louisiana* in the Ships which he shall send thither, and to furnish them with Subsistence and a Captain's Table for 30 Sols per Day, which we will cause to be paid for each.

He shall likewise give Passage in the said Ships, to the Soldiers, which we shall please to send to the said Country; and we will cause the necessary Provisions for their Subsistence to be furnish'd to him, or will pay him for them at the same Price as is paid to the Purveyor-General of our Marine.

He shall be furthermore oblig'd to send on Board each Ship, which he shall cause to set out for

int

for the  
men, a

IX.

Maga

Weigh

shall

us, an

Privile

X. T

said S

try of

of Ex

that h

gage

recko

their

*isiana*

tion,

servin

a long

as we

XI.

which

from

on h

and

into

ties.

shall

houf

they

and

min

For

they

wit

for the said Country, Ten young Men or Women, at his own Election.

IX. We will cause to be deliver'd out of our Magazines to the said *Sieur Crozat*, 10000 Weight of Gunpowder every Year, which he shall pay us for at the Price that it shall cost us, and this for so long Time as the present Privilege shall last.

X. The Wares and Merchandize which the said *Sieur Crozat* shall consign to the said Country of *Louisiana* shall be exempt from all Duties of Exportation, laid or to be laid, on Condition, that his Directors, Deputies or Clerks, shall engage to give within the Space of a Year, to be reckon'd from the Date thereof, a Certificate of their Unlading in the said Country of *Louisiana*; under Penalty, in Case of Contravention, to pay the Quadruple of the Duties, reserving to our selves the Power of giving him a longer Respite in such Cases and Occurrences as we shall think proper.

XI. And as for the Goods and Merchandize, which the *Sieur Crozat* shall cause to be brought from the said Country of *Louisiana*, and upon his Account, into the Ports of our Kingdom, and shall afterwards cause to be transported into Foreign Countries, they shall pay no Duties either of Importation or Exportation, and shall be deposited in the Custom-House, Warehouses of Ports where they shall arrive, until they be taken away; and when the Deputies and Clerks of the said *Sieur Crozat* shall be minded to cause them to be transported into Foreign Countries, either by Sea or Land, they shall be oblig'd to give Security to bring within a certain Time, a Certificate from the  
last

last Office, containing what they Exported there, and another Certificate of their unloading in Foreign Countries.

XII. In Case the said *Sieur Crozat* be obliged, for the furtherance of his Commerce to fetch from Foreign Countries some Goods and Merchandize of Foreign Manufacture, in order to **T R A N S P O R T** them into the said Country of *Louisiana*. He shall make Us Acquainted therewith, and lay before Us States thereof ; upon which we, if we think fit, will Grant him our Particular Permission with Exemptions from all Duties of Importation and Exportation, Provided the said Goods and Merchandize be Deposited afterwards in our Custom-house Ware-houses until they be Laden in the Ships of the said *Sieur Crozat*, who shall be obliged to bring in one Year, to be reckoned from the Day of the Date hereof, a Certificate of their unloading in the said Country of *Louisiana*, under Penalty, in Case of Contravention, to pay quadruple the Duties: Reserving to our selves, in like Manner, the Liberty of granting to the said *Sieur Crozat*, a longer Respite, if it be necessary.

XIII. The Feluccaes, Canoes, and other Vessels belonging to us, and which are in the said Country of *Louisiana*, shall serve for loading, unloading and transporting the Effects of the said *Sieur Crozat*, who shall be bound to keep them in good Condition, and after the Expiration of the said Fifteen Years shall restore them, or a like Number of equal Bulk and Goodness, to our Governor in the said Country.

XIV. If for the Cultures and Plantations which the said *Sieur Crozat* is minded to make  
he

into

he finds  
Country  
every Y  
Coast o  
Guinea  
Blacks,  
*Louisian*  
and Pe  
whatsoe  
for the  
*Sieur Cr*

XV.

said [O  
France,  
turn t  
Confisc  
villedg

XVI.

bliged.  
Years  
the Ga  
During  
of this  
may i  
Officers  
ficers,  
of the  
Given  
Day o  
And c

SIG

B

R

he finds it proper to have Blacks in the said Country of the *Louisiana*, he may send a Ship every Year to trade for them directly upon the Coast of *Guinea*, taking Permission from the *Guinea* Company so to do, he may sell those Blacks, to the Inhabitants of the Colony of *Louisiana*; and we forbid all other Companies and Persons whatsoever, under any Pretence whatsoever, to introduce Blacks or Traffick for them in the said Country, nor shall the said *Sieur Crozat* carry any Blacks else where.

XV. He shall not send any Ships into the said Country of *Louisiana* but directly from *France*, and he shall Cause the said Ships to Return thither again; the whole under Pain of Confiscation and Forfeiture of the Present Priviledge.

XVI. T H E said *Sieur Crozat* shall be obliged, after the Expiration of the first nine Years of this Grant, to Pay the Officers and the Garrison which shall be in the said Country During the Six last Years of the Continuance of this Present Priviledge: The said *Sieur Crozat* may in that Time propose and nominate the Officers, as Vacancies shall fall, and such Officers, shall be Confirmed by us, if we approve of them.

Given at *FONTAINBLEAU* the Fourteenth Day of September in the Year of Grace 1712. And of Our Reign the 70th.

SIGNED LOUIS

By the KING

*PHELIPEAUX, &c.*

Register'd at *PARIS* in the Parliament, the Four and Twentieth of September, 1712.

# T H E I N D E X.

**A.**  
**A** *Cancea's*, Indian Nation, their Household Stuff, Shape, &c. p. 155.

Accidents befallen the *Recolets* 72  
Account given by an *Indian* 92  
Adventure, a strange one 61  
Adultery among the *Illinois*, not much regarded 175  
*Amiable*, Ship, cast away 36  
Alligator eaten 12  
Alligators 64  
*Apalache* Bay 19  
Arrival at Fort Lewis 168  
Art of *Indians* to kill Goats and wild Fowl 136  
*Assonis*, Indian Nation 133

**B.**  
Banks of a River of several Colours 163  
Barbarity towards dead Bodies 100. Of Men towards Women and of Women 128  
*Barbier* (the *Sieur*) marries 72  
Battle fought by the *Cenis* 109  
*Beaujeu* (M. de) Commander of the Man of War, forsakes M. de la Sale 44  
Beds of the *Cenis* 109  
*Belle* (la) Bark lost 67. How and what was sav'd of her 69  
Black Bread in *France* 188  
Boasting of the *Illinois* 173

Boat lost 38, 55  
Building, Manner of it among the *Cenis* 108  
Bullocks found ashore 23  
*Bullocks* (River of) 54  
Buskins of raw Hides instead of Shoes 83

**C.**  
*Cadodaquio* River 142  
*Cabayneborc*, Indian Nation 142  
*Calumet*, or Pipe 146  
Canoe portable 88  
Canoes (River of) 96  
*Cappa* Village 159  
Care of the Dead among the *Illinois* 175  
Carpenter lost 52  
*Cavelier* (Monfr.) with his Company, parts from the Murderers 131. Comes to a *French* Habitation 152  
*Cayman* Island 11  
*Cenis* River 103  
*Cenis*, their Country describ'd 104  
They meet the *French* in solemn Manner 106. An Entertainment given by them 107  
Their Moveables 109. Disfigure themselves 110. Their Manners, Religion, and Ceremonies 112. Battle fought by them 127  
Cere-

Ceremon  
Pipe  
At the  
137.  
Of dre  
Childre  
Choumans  
Climate  
Controv  
Conspir  
ther  
Copal Tr  
Corrient  
Country  
Acco  
Cross b  
Crozet  
lonie  
Cruel T  
Current  
Custom  
Dange  
Dead,  
140.  
*Illino*  
Differ  
man  
Discon  
rang  
Discov  
Dolefu  
Ducki  
Duban  
59.  
Mu  
der  
him  
102  
Dwel

# I N D E X.

Ceremony of the *Calumet*, or  
Pipe 146, 155. Of rejoicing 129  
At the Reception of the *French*  
137. Other Ceremonies 159  
Of dressing a Bullock 162  
Children of the *Illinois* 173  
*Choumans, Indians* 92  
Climate of the Bay of *St. Lewis*  
66

Controversy about Privilege 77  
Conspiracy discover'd 50. Ano-  
ther to murder *M. de la Sale*  
97  
*Copal Tree* 103  
*Corrientes Cape* 113  
Country where they landed,  
Account of it 29. A fine one  
50

Cross by a River 151  
*Crozat (M. de)* only to plant Co-  
lonies in *Louisiana* 187  
Cruel Trophies 128  
Currents 17  
Custom of *Indian Women* 143

## D.

Dangerous Fruit 64  
Dead, *Indian Ceremony* to them  
140. Care of them among the  
*Illinois* 174  
Difference. between the Com-  
manders 4, 26, 44  
Discontents occasion'd by *M. Mo-  
ranges* 97  
Discoveries made 74  
Doleful Entertainment 141  
Ducking of Seamen 5  
*Dubaut* returns from *M. de la Sale*  
59. Endeavours to occasion a  
Mutiny 73. Conspires to murder  
*M. de la Sale* 98. Murders  
him 99. Usurps the Command  
102. Is kill'd by *Heins* 123  
Dwelling of *French* 158

## E.

Encounter with Natives 71  
Entertainment of the *Indians*  
134, 138, 160

## F.

Falls of a River 169  
Fast of *Indians* 163  
Fatigue of the Men 52  
Figure of a pretended Monster  
164  
*Finisferre Cape* 4  
Fish, Plenty of it taken 47  
Fish at the Bay of *St. Lewis* 62  
Flying Fish 5  
Fort built 45. Another 49. The  
first abandon'd 51. The Posture  
of the Second 51. All resort to it  
53

*French Men*, six kill'd by the *In-  
dians* 59. Seven lost and four  
desert 74. Two kill'd 76.  
Three that had been lost heard  
of 94. One among the *Indians*  
107. Entertain'd by the Na-  
tives 115. Some turn'd Sa-  
vage 117, 119. Six go to the  
Wars with the Natives 129  
Some stay with the *Indians* 132  
Only seven set out for *Canada*  
*ibid.* Carry'd on the Backs of  
*Indians* 137  
*French River* 182

## G.

Game of the Stick 175  
Goats and Bulls found, a-  
shore 23  
Gros (*Monfr. le*) dies, and others  
54

## H.

Habit of *Indians* 143  
*Havana* 191  
*Hebahamo Indians* 84  
*Hiberville's Expedition* to the  
*Mississipi* 186  
*Hicus*



# I N D E X.

*Hiens* kills *Dubaut* 123. Seizes the Effects and gives what he pleases to the rest 131  
*Hispaniola* Island 6  
*Holy Ghost* Bay 19  
*Horse* purchas'd of the *Indians* 91. One sold for an *Ax* 116  
*Houabache* River 163  
*House* built after the *French* Manner 151. Description of it 154  
*Hunter* dies with Cold 58  
*Hurons* Nation 180, 181, 182  
*Huts* containing several Families 108

## I.

*Janiquo*, *Indian* Nation 141  
*Indian* Ceremony of the Dead, 140  
*Indian* dies of eating raw *Suet* 165  
*Indians* come aboard 21. Presented and sent ashore 22.  
 Friendly Behaviour of some 34.  
 Their Camp 35. Their Entertainment 36. Affront given them 41. Their Revenge 42.  
 Come to the Fort 48. Kill six of the *French* 59. Some entertain'd by *M. de la Sale* 80  
 One clad like a *Spaniard* 105  
 Expect Presents 148. Some met with Axes 148  
*Inhumanity* 128  
*Instrument* for Tillage among the *Cenis* 109  
*Intrenching* with Trees 81  
*Fourel* (*Monfr.*) the Person that writes this Journal 1. Believes they were at the Mouth of the *Mississipi* and slip'd it 18. Commands a Company 30. Is sav'd from being murder'd by a

*Friend* 102. Sent to the *Cenis* for Provisions 104. Meets a *French* Man among the *Indians* 117. Has an *Indian* Maid offer'd him for a Wife 118. He and others resolve to part from the Murderers 120. Part from them 131. Prosecute the Journey 149. Comes to a *French* Habitation 152. Continues his Journey 157. Arrives at Fort *Lewis* 167. Sets out for *Canada*, and returns again 170  
*Illinois* River 165  
*Illinois* People met with 166  
 Their Manners and Customs, Women, Children, Thieving, Boasting 173. Care of the Dead 174. Game of the Stick, Marriages, Adultery 175. More of them 182

## K.

*Ketch* taken by the *Spaniards* 10  
*Kind* *Indians* 152

## L.

*Landing*, the first 18. The second 24. The third 28  
*Lasaniens*, Palm Trees 14  
*Lewis* (Fort) among the *Illinois* 167  
 Description of it and Country 171  
 Lime, and Clay for Bricks 171  
 Living Creatures about the Bay of *St. Lewis* 62

## M.

*Macbigamea* River 161  
*Madera* Island 4  
*Maligne* River 60, 87  
 Manners and Customs of the *Illinois* 173  
*Marie* (*Monfr. de*) drown'd 139  
 His Funeral 140  
 Marriages of the *Illinois* 175  
 Mea-

Meadow  
Memory

Men sen  
Six kil  
Mexico C  
Mines  
Mischief  
Mississipi  
pass'd  
Found  
Missouri  
Montreal  
Morange  
Monfr  
by th  
Accou  
the In  
Disco  
97. I  
Moveab  
Murder  
lains  
Murder  
101 B  
Fort  
Desig  
Mind

Nabord  
Nation  
Nations

Officers  
Chie  
Oris, an  
kill'd  
Ousabou

Persons  
Sale  
wher  
71.  
him

# I N D E X.

|                  |  |                                       |        |
|------------------|--|---------------------------------------|--------|
| the <i>Cenis</i> |  | <i>Pines Island</i>                   | 11, 12 |
| Meets a          |  | Plants at the Bay of St. Lewis        | 65     |
| e <i>Indians</i> |  | <i>Port de Paix</i>                   | 10     |
| laid off-        |  | <i>Poutouatanni Nation</i>            | 180    |
| 118. He          |  | Presents made by <i>Indians</i>       | 145    |
| part from        |  | To the Dead                           | 174    |
| part from        |  | Product of the Country of the         |        |
| the Jour-        |  | <i>Acanceas</i> 154. Of the Country   |        |
| a <i>French</i>  |  | about Fort Lewis                      | 172    |
| inves his        |  | Provisions hid, Spoilt                | 96     |
| at Fort          |  |                                       |        |
| for <i>Cana-</i> |  | Q                                     |        |
| 170              |  | <i>Quinetondn River</i>               | 181    |
| 165              |  | <i>Quebec, Arrival there</i>          | 183    |
| with 166         |  | R                                     |        |
| Customs,         |  | Rats                                  | 87     |
| thieving,        |  | Rattle Snake bites <i>M. le Gros</i>  | 47     |
| of the           |  |                                       | 67     |
| the Stick,       |  | Reception of <i>Indians</i> 145. At   |        |
| 5. More          |  | Fort Lewis                            | 168    |
| 182              |  | River, a fine one                     | 32     |
|                  |  | <i>Rochelle</i> , Departure thence    | 2      |
|                  |  | <i>Rochfort</i> , Return thither      | 3      |
|                  |  | S                                     |        |
| <i>ards</i> 10   |  | <i>Sabloniere River</i>               | 57     |
| 152              |  | <i>Sagamite</i> , Hasty Pudding       | 113    |
| The se-          |  | St. Antony Cape                       | 13     |
| 28               |  | St. Lewis's Bay 57. Description       |        |
| 14               |  | of the Country                        | 62     |
| <i>Iffinois</i>  |  | <i>Sale (M. de la)</i> his Reputation | 1      |
| 167              |  | His Mistake 20. Much wrong'd          |        |
| entry 171        |  | 44. Goes to discover up a River       |        |
| s 171            |  | 45. Returns and sets out              |        |
| the Bay          |  | again 46. Goes again to discover      |        |
| 62               |  | 57. Returns to the Fort               |        |
|                  |  | 67. Sets out upon another Expedition  |        |
| 161              |  | 68. His Discoveries                   |        |
| 4                |  | and Return 74. Resolves upon          |        |
| 60, 87           |  | a third Expedition 75. Well           |        |
| the <i>Iffi-</i> |  | receiv'd by the Natives 89.           |        |
| 173              |  | Conspiracy to murder him 97           |        |
| 139              |  | Goes to seek his Men and is           |        |
| 140              |  | murder'd by <i>Dubaut</i> 99. His     |        |
| 175              |  | Character                             | 100    |
| Mea-             |  |                                       |        |
|                  |  | Salt                                  |        |

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Meadows very fine                   | 136 |
| Memory of Men kill'd, bewail'd      | 127 |
| Men sent to discover by Land        | 31  |
| Six kill'd by the Natives           | 19  |
| Mexico City                         | 190 |
| Mines                               | 172 |
| Mischief prevented                  | 124 |
| Mississipi River, the Mouth of it   |     |
| pass'd by                           | 27  |
| Found at last                       | 158 |
| Missouri River                      | 164 |
| Montreal, arrival there             | 182 |
| Moranges (Monfr.) Nephew to         |     |
| Monfr. de la Sale 30. Wounded       |     |
| by the Natives 43. Gives an         |     |
| Account of what he saw among        |     |
| the <i>Indians</i> , he was sent to | 92  |
| Discontents occasion'd by him       |     |
| 97. Is murder'd                     | 98  |
| Moveables of the <i>Cenis</i>       | 109 |
| Murders committed by some Villains  | 98  |
| Murderers return to the Camp        |     |
| 101 Resolve to return to the        |     |
| Fort of St. Lewis 120. Their        |     |
| Design 121 Change their             |     |
| Mind 122 Differ in Opinion          | 123 |

## N

|                                        |     |
|----------------------------------------|-----|
| <i>Nabordikhe Indians</i>              | 133 |
| Nation, what is meant by it            | 114 |
| Nations of <i>Indians</i> 90, 114, 140 |     |

## O

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Officers attending an <i>Indian</i>                    |     |
| Chief                                                  | 158 |
| <i>Oris</i> , and <i>Desloges</i> (the <i>Sieurs</i> ) |     |
| kill'd by the Natives                                  | 42  |
| <i>Ouatouaes Nation</i>                                | 180 |

## P

|                                        |    |
|----------------------------------------|----|
| Persons that went with <i>M. de la</i> |    |
| <i>Sale</i> 2. Left in the Settlement  |    |
| when <i>M. de la Sale</i> departed     |    |
| 71. Those that set out with            |    |
| him                                    | 96 |

# I N D E X.

|                                  |     |                                         |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| Salt found in Pits               | 48  | Trees about St. Lewis's Bay             | 64  |
| Salutation, an odd one           | 39  | V                                       |     |
| Savanna Cape                     | 7   | Variation                               | 15  |
| Settlement, vide Fort            |     | Venomous Creatures                      | 63  |
| Ships that went with Monfr. de   |     | Veracruz in new Spain                   | 188 |
| <i>la Sale</i>                   | 2   | Village abandon'd by Indians            | 82  |
| Sombrero Island                  | 7   | Inhabited 86. Another                   | 89  |
| Spaniards, Indi. give an Account |     | W.                                      |     |
| of them 52. Take Monfr. de       |     | War with the Iroquois                   | 176 |
| <i>la Sale's</i> Fort            | 186 | Water from a Tree Sweet                 | 179 |
| Spanish Vessel seen              | 46  | Way from St. Lewis's Bay to find        |     |
| Speeches made to the French      | 138 | the <i>Mississi</i>                     | 78  |
| Spring of Salt Water             | 163 | Ways very bad                           | 133 |
| T                                |     | Wild Fowl plentiful 28, 29, 82,         |     |
| Tabacco                          | 113 | 144                                     |     |
| Thieving of the <i>Ist. nois</i> | 173 | Wild Fruit                              | 164 |
| Tillage among the <i>Cenis</i>   | 109 | Wild Swine                              | 12  |
| Tonningua Village                | 159 | Wolves, how they catch Goats            | 180 |
| Touti (Monfr.) Mistake in his    |     | Women sow among the <i>Cenis</i>        | 82  |
| Account of this Voyage 14        |     | • Description of them <i>ib.</i> Do the |     |
| Comes to Fort Lewis              | 176 | Work at Home, their Behavi-             |     |
| Torima Village                   | 157 | our and Habit 111. Custom               |     |
| Tortuga Island                   | 8   | of some 143. Their Orna-                |     |
| Troisles                         | 63  | ments 143, Do all Labour a-             |     |
| Trade Wind                       | 5   | mong the <i>Istinois</i>                | 173 |
| Travel continu'd                 | 178 | Woods very Thick                        | 82  |
| Travellers, how they liv'd       | 176 |                                         |     |

## F I N I S.

Cyrus Woodman  
Dec. 1826.

Day 64

15

63

188

lians 82

r 89

176

et 179

y to find

78

133

, 29, 82,

144

164

12

h Goats

180

Cenis 82

. Do the

Behavi-

Custom

Orna-

about a-

173

82